THE

LADY OF THE LAKE

BY

SIR WALTER SCOTT.

EDITED BY

EDWIN GINN.

BOSTON:
PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY.
1887.
Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1884, by

EDWIN GINN,


J. S. CUSHING & Co., PRINTERS, 115 HIGH STREET, BOSTON.
ON page v, under the heading "Classics for Children," is given the origin and plan of a series of books intended for the young in our public schools. The series will be well printed in large type, on good paper, and firmly bound, and will be furnished at a price so low as to bring within the reach of every pupil in the land these books, which have hitherto been confined to the homes of those in more favored circumstances.

Scott's writings seem well fitted for children, as the language is simple and graphic, the thought healthful and invigorating, and the events narrated based so largely on real life as to tend to create an interest in historical studies. This poem, with its beautiful descriptions of scenery, its vivid pictures of life, and the charming melody of its rhythm is especially well suited to interest the young.

It has been urged against the use of Shakespeare, Scott, and such writers, in the grammar grades, that it will interfere with the course in the high school, where these authors are studied. If only one out of twenty-five ever reaches the high school, and the twenty-four can read these authors to advantage in the lower grades, would it not be wise to remodel the entire course of study in such a way as to secure the greatest good to the greatest number?

Should it seem to some that too many simple words have been defined, it must be borne in mind that the majority of children, nine years of age, attending public
schools, have read almost nothing, and are not supplied with dictionaries. We have found it very difficult to define certain words concisely, in language sufficiently simple to be within the comprehension of young children.

It has been our aim to give the child, having no other sources of information, such help as would enable him to read this poem intelligently, and we count ourselves especially fortunate in being able to draw so largely from Scott's own writings.

In abridging and quoting from Scott and other writers, we have used their own language without change as far as possible, thinking it better to retain the original vigorous expression, at the risk sometimes of its being a little abrupt, than to restate the thought less forcibly in a smoother connection of sentences.

We regret that no more space could be allowed for the biography, but we trust enough has been given to lead the pupil to read Lockhart's complete biography of Scott. Great as he appears in his works, his real grandeur is shown in his quiet, unassuming life, in his unselfish devotion to the comforts of others, and in his heroic struggle, when crippled with disease, against adverse fortune.

It is recommended that pupils read the historical sketch about the Highlands and James V., page xli, before and after reading the poem.

It is hoped that others with more leisure and ampler resources may carry on the work.

We have availed ourselves, by permission, of Mr. Rolfe's carefully-restored text of the poem.

E. G.
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction: <em>Classics for Children</em></td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Life of Walter Scott</em></td>
<td>xv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Highlanders and Borderers of Scotland</em></td>
<td>xli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argument</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canto I. <em>The Chase</em></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. <em>The Island</em></td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. <em>The Gathering</em></td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. <em>The Prophecy</em></td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. <em>The Combat</em></td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. <em>The Guard-room</em></td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index to Notes</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CLASSICS FOR CHILDREN.

THE present volume forms one of a series of standard works, to be edited for the use of children between the ages of nine and fifteen in the Public Schools. It was suggested by seeing the result of setting children of nine and eleven years to reading THE LADY OF THE LAKE. They soon became so much interested in it that they began not only to read with greater ease, but voluntarily committed to memory large portions of the poem.

This result led to making numerous inquiries of thoughtful men and women, in various walks of life, in regard to their early reading. The evidence thus gained shows that children are capable of enjoying good books at an early age, and the chances of forming in them a taste for good literature are then much better than at a later period.

In order that this course of reading might be removed still further from an experimental basis, a list of questions about the works of standard authors was sent to leading men in the various professions, from whom many valuable answers, suggestions, and offers of assistance have been received. The kind of matter having been decided on, the next thing to be considered was the editorial work. It seems best, as far as practicable, to publish complete works; but some, like Scott's novels,
contain much matter beyond the years of the children for whom the books are designed, besides being too bulky for our purpose. Though it is not an easy task to abridge Scott, we are fortunate in finding a person equal to it, as Miss Yonge's QUENTIN DURWARD shows.

It is designed to give such notes at the foot of the page as will enable children to read understandingly without the aid of other books. It may be thought that we have given too many definitions of words readily found; but these books are designed for children in the Public Schools, few of whom are supplied with dictionaries. Besides, a pupil having a vague idea of the meaning of a word may not take the trouble to look it up; but, if a glance at the bottom of the page would give him more definite information, without loss of time or interest, he would be glad to avail himself of it.

It may be urged that many pupils of this age will not take any interest in such works. Very likely. For such we would prescribe a liberal amount of committing to memory. It may prove quite as interesting to the children, and as valuable, from an educational point of view, as memorizing the ten thousand bays, capes, rivers, islands, lakes, mountains, inlets, counties, towns, and cities now required. The one-tenth that could be recalled by some law of association, as the relation of rivers to mountain chains, the occupations of the people as modified by climate, etc., has been retained and assimilated, but the other nine-tenths have been gotten rid of as useless lumber. It may have had some beneficial influence in exercising the memory, but how much better to have used the same amount of effort in
memorizing the choicest pages of the best authors, which would have had a lasting influence in forming correct literary tastes, as well as in storing the mind with healthful sentiments, to be recalled always with delight.

It seems to us a sad abuse of time to require children to learn such facts as the date of election, term of service, and the state in which each of the Presidents and Vice-Presidents of the United States was born, and the details of every unimportant battle or skirmish in the Colonial, French, and Indian wars. Let them but spend the same amount of time in reading such works as Irving's "Life of Washington," Scott's "Tales of a Grandfather," and Macaulay's "History of England," and they will obtain not only more valuable information, but, what is vastly more important, they will be acquiring a taste for good reading and a love for history which will be of inestimable value to them in after life. Besides, they will learn to use better English from constant use of such models than by studying technical grammar and poring over innumerable examples of true and false syntax.

The child should have only the best set before him, for otherwise he is more liable to copy the imperfect, or to become confused between the true and the false, than to be guided aright.

But to arithmetic we must look for the greatest misappropriation of time. In the country school it consumes about three-fourths of all the time. It is common to find young men who can solve every one of the thousand puzzles in the bulky arithmetics, but cannot write a common letter without making half a dozen
mistakes in grammar and spelling. The pupils in the Grammar Schools must spend years over the long and tedious examples in compound fractions, compound numbers, compound proportion, profit and loss, partnership, alligation, involution, square and cube roots, geometrical progression, permutations, annuities, and what not, though they have not time to read a single play of Shakespeare or a volume of history or other standard literature.

Much valuable time is wasted by reversing the true order of studies, and giving so much attention to exhibitions, examinations, and methods.

The child with a little knowledge and a good memory may make a far better showing than the one who knows a great deal more of the subject. Memory commands a premium; intelligence is at a discount.

All real progress must be unconscious, and the instant the pupil turns his thoughts to what he is doing and how he is doing it, he not only ceases to learn, but has put the greatest bar to his future progress, by emphasizing his self-consciousness and egotism. As Dr. Stanley Hall truly says, such teaching is like the farmer's tearing up his beans from the earth every day, to observe the manner and progress of growth.

The first lesson we would give would be the reverse of all this. We would never for a moment allow any study with any other idea than simply understanding the subject without thought of answering any questions on it. We would try to get the pupil to forget everything, except his lesson, and utterly to lose himself in that.

It is not natural for young children to confine their
attention very closely or very long to one thing. There is so much to learn, so many novel things, that they must give some time to each. One should not attempt to control too early in life this natural tendency to change; but, as soon as children begin to use books, they should be taught the value of giving their undivided attention to the lesson in hand, at short intervals at first, lengthening the time gradually so as not to tire. We would impress upon them the wickedness of playing study, giving a listless, partial attention, and allowing their minds frequently to wander to other subjects. This want of concentration of effort is the greatest possible obstacle to advancement in learning,—a fault most common to pupils, and, strange to say, one to which but few teachers give any attention.

It is necessary for children to read a great deal, to acquire that facility of expression which will enable them to perform the merely mechanical operation of reading without conscious effort. The mind should be entirely free to concentrate itself on the subject-matter. Now, since it is not natural for them to apply themselves closely enough and long enough to accomplish this work, we should aid them by supplying an abundance of interesting material. It is not, therefore, of so much importance, at this stage of the child's education, that the highest moral truths be presented, as that the matter be of such intense interest as to catch and hold the whole attention of the pupil. The highest moral law he should now know is to learn the command of words, and the most effective use of his faculties. Care should be taken that his English should be simple and forcible, and nothing harmful in ethics should be allowed.
It is a waste of time to try to teach morals, in his reading lesson, to a child who has to spell out his words; and almost as bad to try to teach geography, grammar, arithmetic, and the other subjects. Words are to him as tools to the mechanic. Until he has learned to use them effectively, he should not be put to serious work, where his attention is distracted from his first duty,—the perfecting himself in his trade, the command of words. If a large portion of the time now given to spelling out words, in geography, arithmetic, grammar, and stupid scrap reading-lessons, were devoted at first to reading only, our children would not only become much better scholars in these various branches, but read more literature in the Grammar Schools than the college student now gets before graduating; besides, they would acquire a literary taste and a love for good reading, of inestimable value to them in their future life, which will never be so busy but that they will find the time for a few moments' gratification of it. People are ignorant, not so much because of being overworked, as from want of a love for good reading. Give the children a chance, a glimpse into the great storehouses of knowledge in books, wherein they may commune with the greatest minds at their best.

After the child has learned to read with ease simple stories from all sources, the course should assume more definite form, including the standard works of fiction, history, biography, natural history, etc., all well graded, keeping constantly in mind these three points: interest, moral power, and style; selecting those only which embody these all in the greatest degree.

It is of the greatest importance to develop a love for
history in early life, as no one can be well read without a fair knowledge of the past. In fact, one must know a people in order to understand their literature. Some of the best thoughts of a writer, depending upon allusions to historical persons or events, are entirely lost to the reader not familiar with history. Nor is this the only reason of its value. The tracing of great events unfolds the mind. We suffer and enjoy with the struggling mortals of the past, and, as it were, pass through their very experiences, and are able to reap their rewards while we avoid their mistakes. One who really loves history will find time to read it, but none for cheap novels. Leading epochs should be selected from the great historians, adding such information as may be necessary for a complete understanding of the extracts. The historical novel and biography are especially well calculated to create a love for history, and the whole course should be so graded that biography, natural history, novels, travels, history, and the various departments of literature should be made mutually helpful and dependent, covering the same periods and illustrating one another.

This work cannot be left to the High School, for we, find, on a careful examination of the reports from several of our largest cities, where the schools have attained their greatest perfection, that only one in twenty-five of the whole number of pupils ever reaches that grade.

Besides, only a very limited portion of time is now given to this work in our higher institutions of learning, and there is a prospect of less in the near future. The bread-and-butter theory of education, appealing directly to the needs of the great majority of the people, has
always exerted a strong influence against the higher training, and of late it has become alarmingly popular in our very strongholds of a liberal education.

It may prove a dangerous experiment in education to allow the modern to take the place of the ancient languages, which have been for so many centuries the basis of the best training the world has yet known. A single generation may suffice to show our lost ground, but centuries may not afford time to regain it.

A knowledge of French and German may enable the American trader to extend his commercial relations and rapidly to gain wealth, or the tourist to make a much more pleasant trip abroad; but this education only enables him to pass readily from one bustling country to another, where he will still find his fellow-traveller snatching his hasty meal, reading his damp newspaper, and content to become the connecting link between the rail-car and the telegraph-wire. When studying Latin and Greek, we are forced out of the present, and are obliged to extend our horizon, and, like the near-sighted at sea, attain a more healthy vision. It has a wonderfully calming influence on young America to spend a few years studying those old heathen languages, which after two thousand years furnish the whole civilized world their models of expression in language, art, and law.

Though only a small proportion of the whole number of pupils now reach the High School, its elevating influence is felt on all the lower grades; and, as fast as the people learn to value education as increasing one's manhood or womanhood by developing the powers of enjoyment and usefulness rather than as a means of gaining wealth, they will make greater exertions to furnish their children the best possible.
CLASSICS FOR CHILDREN.

It is hoped that this attempt to put standard literature into the hands of young children will receive encouragement, and that a free discussion of the subject may lead to such changes in the course of instruction in the Public Schools as shall give to each study the proportion of time its importance may fairly claim.

E. G.

JANUARY, 1887.

Since writing the above we have issued a dozen or more books in our series of Classics for Children without any abridgment. The further we carry this experiment, the more we are convinced that pupils between the ages of twelve and fifteen are capable of taking in any of Scott's, or other similar works, without abridgment.

E. G.
LIFE OF WALTER SCOTT.

ABRIDGED FROM HIS AUTOBIOGRAPHY.

WALTER SCOTT, my father, was born in 1729, and educated to the profession of a Writer to the Signet.\(^1\) I was born, as I believe, on the 15th August, 1771. I showed every sign of health and strength until I was about eighteen months old. One night, I have been often told, I showed great reluctance to be caught and put to bed; and after being chased about the room, was apprehended and consigned to my dormitory with some difficulty. It was the last time I was to show such personal agility. In the morning, I was discovered to be affected with the fever which often accompanies the cutting of large teeth. It held me three days. On the fourth, when they went to bathe me as usual, they discovered that I had lost the power of my right leg. My grandfather, an excellent anatomist as well as physician, the late worthy Alexander Wood, and many others of the most respectable of the faculty, were consulted. There appeared to be no dislocation or sprain; blisters and other topical remedies were applied in vain. The advice of my grandfather, Dr. Rutherford, that I should be sent to reside in the country, to give the chance of natural exertion, excited by free air and liberty, was first resorted to; and before I have the recollection of the slightest event, I was, agreeably to this friendly counsel, an inmate in the farmhouse of Sandy-Knowe.

\(^1\) An Edinburgh solicitor.
It is here at Sandy-Knowe, in the residence of my paternal grandfather, already mentioned, that I have the first consciousness of existence.

My grandmother, in whose youth the old Border depredations were matter of recent tradition, used to tell me many a tale of Watt of Harden, Wight Willie of Aikwood, Jamie Telfer of the fair Dodhead, and other heroes—merrymen all of the persuasion and calling of Robin Hood and Little John. Two or three old books which lay in the window-seat were explored for my amusement in the tedious winter-days. *Automathes*, and Ramsay's *Tea-table Miscellany*, were my favorites, although at a later period an odd volume of Josephus's *Wars of the Jews* divided my partiality.

My kind and affectionate aunt, Miss Janet Scott, whose memory will ever be dear to me, used to read these works to me with admirable patience, until I could repeat long passages by heart. The ballad of Hardyknute I was early master of, to the great annoyance of almost our only visitor, the worthy clergyman of the parish, Dr. Duncan, who had not patience to have a sober chat interrupted by my shouting forth this ditty. Methinks I now see his tall, thin, emaciated figure, his legs cased in clasped gambadoes, and his face of a length that would have rivalled the Knight of La Mancha's, and hear him exclaiming, "One may as well speak in the mouth of a cannon as where that child is."

I was in my fourth year when my father was advised that the Bath waters might be of some advantage to my lameness. My affectionate aunt, although such a journey promised to a person of her retired habits anything but pleasure or amusement, undertook as readily to accompany me to the wells of Bladud as if she had expected all the delight that ever the prospect of a watering-place held out to its most impatient visitants. My health was by this time a good deal confirmed by the country air and the influence of that imperceptible
and unfatiguing exercise to which the good sense of my grandfather had subjected me; for, when the day was fine, I was usually carried out and laid down beside the old shepherd, among the crags or rocks round which he fed his sheep. The impatience of a child soon inclined me to struggle with my infirmity, and I began by degrees to stand, to walk, and to run. Although the limb affected was much shrunk and contracted, my general health, which was of more importance, was much strengthened by being frequently in the open air; and, in a word, I, who in a city had probably been condemned to hopeless and helpless decrepitude, was now a healthy, high-spirited, and, my lameness apart, a sturdy child.

During my residence at Bath I acquired the rudiments of reading, at a day-school kept by an old dame near our lodgings, and I had never a more regular teacher, although I think I did not attend her a quarter of a year. An occasional lesson from my aunt supplied the rest. Afterwards, when grown a big boy, I had a few lessons from Mr. Stalker of Edinburgh, and finally from the Rev. Mr. Cleeve. But I never acquired a just pronunciation, nor could I read with much propriety.

The most delightful recollections of Bath are dated after the arrival of my uncle, Captain Robert Scott, who introduced me to all the little amusements which suited my age, and, above all, to the theatre. The play was *As You Like It*; and the witchery of the whole scene is alive in my mind at this moment. I made, I believe, noise more than enough, and remember being so much scandalized at the quarrel between Orlando and his brother, in the first scene, that I screamed out, "A’n’t they brothers?" A few weeks' residence at home convinced me, who had till then been an only child in the house of my grandfather, that a quarrel between brothers was a very natural event.

After being a year at Bath, I returned first to Edinburgh,
and afterwards for a season to Sandy-Knowe;—and thus the time whiled away till about my eighth year, when it was thought sea-bathing might be of service to my lameness.

For this purpose, still under my aunt’s protection, I remained some weeks at Prestonpans,—a circumstance not worth mentioning, excepting to record my juvenile intimacy with an old military veteran, Dalgetty by name, who had pitched his tent in that little village, after all his campaigns, subsisting upon an ensign’s half-pay, though called by courtesy a Captain. As this old gentleman, who had been in all the German wars, found very few to listen to his tales of military feats, he formed a sort of alliance with me, and I used invariably to attend him for the pleasure of hearing those communications. Sometimes our conversation turned on the American war, which was then raging. It was about the time of Burgoyne’s unfortunate expedition, to which my Captain and I augured different conclusions. Somebody had shown me a map of North America, and, struck with the rugged appearance of the country, and the quantity of lakes, I expressed some doubts on the subject of the General’s arriving safely at the end of his journey, which were very indignantly refuted by the Captain. The news of the Saratoga disaster, while it gave me a little triumph, rather shook my intimacy with the veteran.

Besides this veteran, I found another ally at Prestonpans in the person of George Constable, an old friend of my father’s. He was the first person who told me about Falstaff and Hotspur, and other characters in Shakespeare. What idea I annexed to them I know not, but I must have annexed some, for I remember quite well being interested in the subject. Indeed, I rather suspect that children derive impulses of a powerful and important kind in hearing things which they cannot entirely comprehend; and, therefore, that to
write down to children's understanding is a mistake: set them on the scent, and let them puzzle it out.

From Prestonpans I was transported back to my father's house in George's Square, which continued to be my most established place of residence, until my marriage in 1797. I felt the change, from being a single indulged brat to becoming a member of a large family, very severely; for, under the gentle government of my kind grandmother, who was meekness itself, and of my aunt, who, though of an higher temper, was exceedingly attached to me, I had acquired a degree of license which could not be permitted in a large family. I had sense enough, however, to bend my temper to my new circumstances; but, such was the agony which I internally experienced, that I have guarded against nothing more, in the education of my own family, than against their acquiring habits of self-willed caprice and domination. I found much consolation, during this period of mortification, in the partiality of my mother. She joined to a light and happy temper of mind a strong turn to study poetry and works of imagination.

My lameness and my solitary habits had made me a tolerable reader, and my hours of leisure were usually spent in reading aloud to my mother Pope's translation of Homer, which, excepting a few traditionary ballads, and the songs in Allan Ramsay's Evergreen, was the first poetry which I perused. My mother had good natural taste and great feeling: she used to make me pause upon those passages which expressed generous and worthy sentiments, and, if she could not divert me from those which were descriptive of battle and tumult, she contrived at least to divide my attention between them. My own enthusiasm, however, was chiefly awakened by the wonderful and the terrible—the common taste of children, but in which I have remained a child even unto this day. I got by heart, not as a task, but almost
without intending it, the passages with which I was most pleased, and used to recite them aloud, both when alone and to others—more willingly, however, in my hours of solitude, for I had observed some auditors smile, and I dreaded ridicule at that time of life more than I have ever done since.

In [1778] I was sent to the second class of the Grammar School, or High School of Edinburgh, then taught by Mr. Luke Fraser, a good Latin scholar and a very worthy man. Though I had received, with my brothers, in private, lessons of Latin from Mr. James French, now a minister of the Kirk of Scotland, I was nevertheless rather behind the class in which I was placed both in years and in progress. This was a real disadvantage, and one to which a boy of lively temper and talents ought to be as little exposed as one who might be less expected to make up his lee-way, as it is called. The situation has the unfortunate effect of reconciling a boy of the former character (which in a posthumous work I may claim for my own) to holding a subordinate station among his class-fellows—to which he would otherwise affix disgrace. There is also, from the constitution of the High School, a certain danger not sufficiently attended to. The boys take precedence in their places, as they are called, according to their merit, and it requires a long while, in general, before even a clever boy, if he falls behind the class, or is put into one for which he is not quite ready, can force his way to the situation which his abilities really entitle him to hold. But, in the meanwhile, he is necessarily led to be the associate and companion of those inferior spirits with whom he is placed; for the system of precedence, though it does not limit the general intercourse among the boys, has nevertheless the effect of throwing them into clubs and coteries, according to the vicinity of the seats they hold. A boy of good talents, therefore, placed even for a time among his inferiors, especially if they be also his elders, learns to
participate in their pursuits and objects of ambition, which are usually very distinct from the acquisition of learning; and it will be well if he does not also imitate them in that indifference which is contented with bustling over a lesson so as to avoid punishment, without affecting superiority or aiming at reward. It was probably owing to this circumstance, that, although at a more advanced period of life I have enjoyed considerable facility in acquiring languages, I did not make any great figure at the High School; or, at least, any exertions which I made were desultory and little to be depended on.

Our class contained some very excellent scholars. As for myself, I glanced like a meteor from one end of the class to the other, and commonly disgusted my kind master as much by negligence and frivolity as I occasionally pleased him by flashes of intellect and talent. Among my companions my good-nature and a flow of ready imagination rendered me very popular. Boys are uncommonly just in their feelings, and at least equally generous. My lameness, and the efforts which I made to supply that disadvantage, by making up in address what I wanted in activity, engaged the latter principle in my favor; and in the winter play-hours, when hard exercise was impossible, my tales used to assemble an admiring audience round Lucky Brown's fireside, and happy was he that could sit next to the inexhaustible narrator. I was also, though often negligent of my own task, always ready to assist my friends; and hence I had a little party of staunch partisans and adherents, stout of hand and heart, though somewhat dull of head, — the very tools for raising a hero to eminence. So, on the whole, I made a brighter figure in the yards than in the class.

After having been three years under Mr. Fraser, our class was, in the usual routine of the school, turned over to Dr. Adam, the Rector. It was from this respectable man that
I first learned the value of the knowledge I had hitherto considered only as a burdensome task. It was the fashion to remain two years at his class, where we read Cæsar and Livy and Sallust, in prose; Virgil, Horace, and Terence, in verse. I had by this time mastered, in some degree, the difficulties of the language, and began to be sensible of its beauties. This was really gathering grapes from thistles; nor shall I soon forget the swelling of my little pride when the Rector pronounced, that though many of my school-fellows understood the Latin better, Gualterus Scott was behind few in following and enjoying the author’s meaning. Thus encouraged, I distinguished myself by some attempts at poetical versions from Horace and Virgil. Dr. Adam used to invite his scholars to such essays, but never made them tasks. I gained some distinction upon these occasions, and the Rector in future took much notice of me; and his judicious mixture of censure and praise went far to counterbalance my habits of indolence and inattention. I saw I was expected to do well, and I was piqued in honor to vindicate my master’s favorable opinion. I climbed, therefore, to the first form; and, though I never made a first-rate Latinist, my school-fellows, and what was of more consequence, I myself, considered that I had a character for learning to maintain.

From Dr. Adam’s class I should, according to the usual routine, have proceeded immediately to college. But, fortunately, I was not yet to lose, by a total dismissal from constraint, the acquaintance with the Latin which I had acquired. My health had become rather delicate from rapid growth, and my father was easily persuaded to allow me to spend half a year at Kelso with my kind aunt, Miss Janet Scott, whose inmate I again became. It was hardly worth mentioning that I had frequently visited her during our short vacations.
In the meanwhile my acquaintance with English literature was gradually extending itself. In the intervals of my school hours I had always perused with avidity such books of history or poetry or voyages and travels as chance presented to me,—not forgetting the usual, or rather ten times the usual, quantity of fairy tales, eastern stories, romances, etc. These studies were totally unregulated and undirected. My tutor thought it almost a sin to open a profane play or poem; and my mother, besides that she might be in some degree trammelled by the religious scruples which he suggested, had no longer the opportunity to hear me read poetry as formerly. I found, however, in her dressing-room (where I slept at one time) some odd volumes of Shakespeare; nor can I easily forget the rapture with which I sate up in my shirt reading them by the light of a fire in her apartment, until the bustle of the family rising from supper warned me it was time to creep back to my bed, where I was supposed to have been safely deposited since nine o'clock. Chance, however, threw in my way a poetical preceptor. This was no other than the excellent and benevolent Dr. Blacklock, well known at that time as a literary character. I know not how I attracted his attention, and that of some of the young men who boarded in his family; but so it was that I became a frequent and favored guest. The kind old man opened to me the stores of his library, and through his recommendation I became intimate with Ossian and Spenser. I was delighted with both, yet I think chiefly with the latter poet. The tawdry repetitions of the Ossianic phraseology disgusted me rather sooner than might have been expected from my age. But Spenser I could have read forever. Too young to trouble myself about the allegory, I considered all the knights and ladies and dragons and giants in their outward and esoteric sense, and God only knows how delighted I was to find myself in such society. As I had always a
wonderful facility in retaining in my memory whatever verses pleased me, the quantity of Spenser's stanzas which I could repeat was really marvellous. But this memory of mine was a very fickle ally, and has through my whole life acted merely upon its own capricious motion, and might have enabled me to adopt old Beattie of Meikledale's answer, when complimented by a certain reverend divine on the strength of the same faculty: "No, sir," answered the old Borderer, "I have no command of my memory. It only retains what hits my fancy; and probably, sir, if you were to preach to me for two hours, I would not be able when you finished to remember a word you had been saying." My memory was precisely of the same kind: it seldom failed to preserve most tenaciously a favorite passage of poetry, a play-house ditty, or, above all, a Border-raid ballad; but names, dates, and the other technicalities of history escaped me in a most melancholy degree. The philosophy of history, a much more important subject, was also a sealed book at this period of my life; but I gradually assembled much of what was striking and picturesque in historical narrative; and when, in riper years, I attended more to the deduction of general principles, I was furnished with a powerful host of examples in illustration of them. I was, in short, like an ignorant gamester, who kept up a good hand until he knew how to play it.

I left the High School, therefore, with a great quantity of general information, ill arranged, indeed, and collected without system; yet deeply impressed upon my mind; readily assorted by my power of connection and memory, and gilded, if I may be permitted to say so, by a vivid and active imagination. If my studies were not under any direction at Edinburgh, in the country, it may be well imagined, they were less so. A respectable subscription library, a circulating library of ancient standing, and some private book-
shelves, were open to my random perusal, and I waded into
the stream like a blind man into a ford, without the power
of searching my way, unless by groping for it. My appetite
for books was as ample and indiscriminating as it was indé-
fatigable, and I since have had too frequently reason to
repent that few ever read so much, and to so little purpose.

Among the valuable acquisitions I made about this time,
was an acquaintance with Tasso's Jerusalem Delivered. But,
above all, I then first became acquainted with Bishop Percy's
Reliques of Ancient Poetry. I remember well the spot
where I read these volumes for the first time. It was
beneath a huge platanus-tree, in the ruins of what had been
intended for an old-fashioned arbor in the garden I have
mentioned. The summer-day sped onward so fast, that,
notwithstanding the sharp appetite of thirteen, I forgot the
hour of dinner, was sought for with anxiety, and was still
found entranced in my intellectual banquet. To read and to
remember was in this instance the same thing, and hence-
forth I overwhelmed my school-fellows, and all who would
hearken to me, with tragical recitations from the ballads of
Bishop Percy. The first time, too, I could scrape a few
shillings together, which were not common occurrences with
me, I bought unto myself a copy of these beloved volumes;
nor do I believe I ever read a book half so frequently, or
with half the enthusiasm. About this period also I became
acquainted with the works of Richardson, and those of
Mackenzie, with Fielding, Smollet, and some others of our
best novelists.

To this period also I can trace distinctly the awaking of
that delightful feeling for the beauties of natural objects
which has never since deserted me. The neighborhood of
Kelso, the most beautiful, if not the most romantic village
in Scotland, is eminently calculated to awaken these ideas.

From this time the love of natural beauty, more especially
when combined with ancient ruins, or remains of our fathers' piety or splendor, became with me an insatiable passion, which, if circumstances had permitted, I would willingly have gratified by travelling over half the globe.

If, however, it should ever fall to the lot of youth to peruse these pages—let such a reader remember, that it is with the deepest regret that I recollect in my manhood the opportunities of learning which I neglected in my youth; that through every part of my literary career I have felt pinched and hampered by my own ignorance; and that I would at this moment give half the reputation I have had the good fortune to acquire, if by doing so I could rest the remaining part upon a sound foundation of learning and science.
LIFE OF SCOTT.

ABRIDGED MAINLY FROM LOCKHART AND HUTTON.

As Scott grew up, entered the classes of the college, and began his legal studies, first as apprentice to his father, and then in the law classes of the University, he became noticeable to all his friends for his gigantic memory and the rich stores of romantic material with which it was loaded.

His reading was almost all in the direction of military exploit, or romance and mediæval legend and the later border songs of his own country. He learned Italian and read Ariosto. Later he learned Spanish and devoured Cervantes, whose "novelas," he said, "first inspired him with the ambition to excel in fiction"; and all that he read and admired he remembered.

It might be supposed that, with these romantic tastes, Scott could scarcely have made much of a lawyer, though the inference would, I believe, be quite mistaken. His father, however, reproached him with being better fitted for a pedlar than a lawyer,—so persistently did he trudge over all the neighboring counties in search of the beauties of nature and the historic associations of battle, siege, or legend.

In spite of all this love of excitement, Scott became a sound lawyer, and might have been a great one, had not his pride of character, the impatience of his genius, and the stir of his imagination rendered him indisposed to wait and
slave in the precise manner which the prepossessions of solicitors appoint.

He continued to practise at the bar—nominally at least—for fourteen years, but the life of literature and the life of the bar hardly ever suit, and in Scott’s case they suited the less, that he felt himself likely to be a dictator in the one field, and only a postulant in the other. Literature was a far greater gainer by his choice than law could have been a loser. For his capacity for the law he shared with thousands of able men, his capacity for literature with few or none.

**Love and Marriage.**

One Sunday, about two years before his call to the bar, Scott offered his umbrella to a young lady of much beauty who was coming out of the Greyfriars Church during a shower; the umbrella was graciously accepted; and it was not an unprecedented consequence that Scott fell in love with the borrower, who turned out to be Margaret, daughter of Sir John and Lady Jane Stuart Belches, of Ivernay. For near six years after this, Scott indulged the hope of marrying this lady, and it does not seem doubtful that the lady herself was in part responsible for this impression.

For some reason this strong attachment was broken off. It may have been on account of some disagreement between the young people themselves, but most likely from a difference in the rank of the parties. It was his first and only deep passion, so far as ever can be known to us, and had a great influence on his after life, both in keeping him free from some of the most dangerous temptations in life during his youth, and in creating in him an interior world of dreams and recollections, on which his imagination was continually fed.

The pride which was always so notable a feature in Scott probably sustained him through the keen inward pain which it is very certain from a great many of his own words
that he must have suffered in this uprooting of his most passionate hopes. And it was in part probably the same pride which led him to form, within the year, a new tie—his engagement to Mademoiselle Charpentier, or Miss Carpenter, as she was usually called,—the daughter of a French royalist of Lyons who had died early in the revolution.

She made on the whole a very good wife, only one to be protected by him from every care, and not one to share Scott's deeper anxieties or to participate in his dreams.

Border Minstrelsy and Maturer Poems.

Ever since his earliest college days Scott had been collecting, in those excursions of his into Liddesdale and elsewhere, materials for a book on *The Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border*; and the publication of this work, in January, 1802, was his first great literary success. The whole edition of eight hundred copies was sold within the year, while the skill and care which Scott had devoted to the historical illustration of the ballads, and the force and spirit of his own new ballads, written in imitation of the old, gained him at once a very high literary name. And the name was well deserved.

Scott’s genius flowered late. It was not until he was already thirty-one years of age that he wrote the first canto of his first great romance in verse, *The Lay of the Last Minstrel*. Jeffrey says of the three poems: "*The Lay*, if I may venture to state the creed now established, is, I should say, generally considered as the most natural and original, *Marmion* as the most powerful and splendid, *The Lady of the Lake* as the most interesting, romantic, picturesque, and graceful of his great poems."

It is in painting those moods and exploits, in relation to which Scott shares most completely the feelings of ordinary men, but experiences them with far greater strength and purity than ordinary men, that he triumphs as a poet.
His romance is like his native scenery,—bold, bare, and rugged, with a swift, deep stream of strong, pure feeling running through it. There is plenty of color in his pictures, as there is on the Scotch hills when the heather is out. And so too there is plenty of intensity in his romantic situations; but it is the intensity of simple, natural, unsophisticated, hardy, and manly characters.

PARTNERSHIP WITH THE BALLANTYNE BROTHERS.

Before proceeding further with Scott's life, it may be well to mention briefly his commercial relations with the Ballantyne Brothers, which had such an important bearing on the rest of his life.

About the year 1805, before he had any idea of the gains he might derive from his writings, and while his income from other sources was very limited, he formally, but secretly, entered into the printing business as a partner with his old schoolmate, James Ballantyne.

Although Ballantyne kept his accounts in a loose way, he otherwise managed the business fairly well; and it might have proved a good investment had not Scott soon after, in order to furnish work to the printing-office, engaged in the publishing and book-selling business with John Ballantyne.

Great risks attend this business, requiring good financial ability, a large acquaintance with men, sound judgment, and close application; yet Scott selected a frivolous man of pleasure, with neither character nor capacity, as a partner, relying probably on his own judgment for managing the publishing house. For such a task he was wholly unfitted. Because he was fond of antiquarian and historical researches, he supposed the people were eager for such reading; and because some of his friends desired to write unsalable books, he could not refuse to publish them. It is not sufficient for a publisher to ascertain that the book
offered is a good one, but he must know whether it is so well
adapted to the times and the wants of the community as to
command a reasonable sale.

Besides the firm's making so many bad investments, John
Ballantyne was squandering its money in dissipation, so
that Scott was kept in constant fear of bankruptcy all
through the years 1813 and 1814; and it was not until the
publication of Waverley, opening up the richest vein in his
own genius and popularity, that these alarms were ended.

So great was the success of this novel that the leading pub-
lisbers were very eager to purchase a share in it and subse-
quent issues. Constable, of Edinburgh, secured the works,
but on condition that he should buy also a large part of the
worthless stock of John Ballantyne & Co. This sale enabled
Scott to wind up that unfortunate enterprise fairly well,
although the printing house of James Ballantyne & Co. still
held some of their notes, and Constable, on whom he was
depending for money to extend his estate, build his castle,
and pay his other expenses, was seriously crippled by the
purchase of all this unsalable stock.

THE WAVERLEY NOVELS.

In the summer of 1814, Scott took up again and completed
— almost at a single heat — a fragment of a Jacobite story
begun in 1805 and then laid aside. It was published anony-
mously, and its astonishing success turned back again the
scales of Scott's fortunes, already inclining ominously
towards a catastrophe. This story was Waverley.

Scott's method of composition was always the same; and,
when writing an imaginative work, the rate of progress
seems to have been pretty even, depending much more on the
absence of disturbing engagements than on any mental
irregularity. The morning was always his brightest time;
but morning or evening, in country or in town, well or ill,
writing with his own pen or dictating to an amanuensis in the intervals of screaming-fits due to the torture of cramp in the stomach, Scott spun away at his imaginative web almost as evenly as a silkworm spins at its golden cocoon.

In the fourteen most effective years of Scott's literary life, during which he wrote twenty-three novels besides shorter tales, the best stories appear to have been on the whole the most rapidly written, probably because they took the strongest hold of the author's imagination.

But though, to our larger experience, Scott's achievement, in respect of mere fertility, is by no means the miracle which it once seemed, I do not think one of his successors can compare with him for a moment in the ease and truth with which he painted, not merely the life of his own time and country—seldom indeed that of precisely his own time,—but that of days long past, and often too of scenes far distant. The most powerful of all his stories, *Old Mortality*, was the story of a period more than a century and a quarter before he wrote; and others—which, though inferior to this in force, are nevertheless, when compared with the so-called historical romances of any other English writer, what sunlight is to moonlight, if you can say as much for the latter as to admit even that comparison—go back to the period of the Tudors, that is, two centuries and a half. *Quentin Durward* runs back farther still, far into the previous century, while *Ivanhoe* and *The Talisman* carry us back more than five hundred years.

The most striking feature of Scott's romances is that, for the most part, they are pivoted on public rather than mere private interests and passions. With but few exceptions—(*The Antiquary*, *St. Ronan's Well*, and *Guy Mannering* are the most important)—Scott's novels give us an imaginative view, not of mere individuals, but of individuals as they are affected by the public strifes and social divisions of the age. No man can read Scott without being more of a public man.
LIFE OF SCOTT.

Scott in Adversity.

With the year 1825 came a financial crisis, and Constable began to tremble for his solvency. From the date of his baronetcy (1820), Sir Walter had launched out into a considerable increase of expenditure. He got plans on a rather large scale in 1821 for the extension of Abbotsford, which were all carried out. To meet his expenses in this and other ways he received Constable’s bills for “four unnamed works of fiction,” of which he had not written a line.

Nor were the obligations he incurred on his own account, and that of his family, the only ones by which he was burdened. He was always incurring expenses, often heavy expenses, for other people. Such obligations, however, would have been nothing when compared with Sir Walter’s means, had all his bills on Constable been duly honored, and had not the printing firm of Ballantyne and Co. been so deeply involved with Constable’s house that it necessarily became insolvent when he stopped. Taken altogether, I believe that Sir Walter earned during his own lifetime at least £140,000 by his literary work alone, probably more; while even on his land and building combined he did not apparently spend more than half that sum.

Thus even his loss of the price of several novels by Constable’s failure would not seriously have compromised Scott’s position, but for his share in the printing-house, which fell with Constable, and the obligations of which amounted to £117,000.

As Scott had always forestalled his income,—spending the purchase-money of his poems and novels before they were written,—such a failure as this, at the age of fifty-five, when all the freshness of his youth was gone out of him, when he saw his son’s prospects blighted as well as his own, and knew perfectly that James Ballantyne, unassisted by
him, could never hope to pay any fraction of the debt worth mentioning, would have been paralyzing, had he not been a man of iron nerve, and of a pride and courage hardly ever equalled. Domestic calamity, too, was not far off. For two years he had been watching the failure of his wife's health with increasing anxiety, and, as calamities seldom come single, her illness took a most serious form at the very time when the blow fell, and she died within four months of the failure. Nay, Scott was himself unwell at the critical moment, and was taking sedatives which discomposed his brain.

And this was Scott's preparation for his failure, and the bold resolve which followed it,—to work for his creditors as he had worked for himself, and to pay off, if possible, the whole £117,000 by his own literary exertions.

His estate was conveyed to trustees for the benefit of his creditors till such time as he should pay off Ballantyne and Co.'s debt, which of course in his lifetime he never did. Yet between January, 1826, and January, 1828, he earned for his creditors very nearly £40,000. Woodstock sold for £3228, "a matchless sale," as Sir Walter remarked, "for less than three months' work." Had Sir Walter's health lasted, he would have redeemed his obligations on behalf of Ballantyne and Co. within eight or nine years at most from the time of his failure. But what is more remarkable still is that after his health failed he struggled on with little more than half a brain, but a whole will, to work while it was yet day, though the evening was dropping fast.

Not only did he row much harder against the stream of fortune than he had ever rowed with it, but, what required still more resolution, he fought on against the growing conviction that his imagination would not kindle, as it used to do, to its old heat.

He struggled on even to the end, and did not consent to
try the experiment of a voyage and visit to Italy till his immediate work was done. But the rest came too late. So intense and continuous had been his application to work that even his very robust constitution was so completely exhausted that it was no longer able to repair the ravages of disease. He spent several months abroad, visiting Malta, Naples, Rome, Venice, and other places of interest, without improvement. He intended to visit Goethe, but the death of the great author at this time changed his plans, increasing his desire for an immediate return home. He sank rapidly, becoming quite unconscious during the latter part of the homeward journey, until his eye caught the towers of Abbotsford, when he sprang up with a cry of delight. Mr. Laidlaw, a dear friend, was waiting for him, and he met him with a cry, "Ha! Willie Laidlaw. O, man, how often I have thought of you!" His dogs came round his chair, and began to fawn on him and lick his hands, while Sir Walter smiled or sobbed over them. The next morning he was wheeled about his garden, and on the following morning was out in this way for a couple of hours; within a day or two he fancied that he could write again, but on taking the pen into his hand his fingers could not clasp it, and he sank back with tears rolling down his cheek. Later, when Laidlaw said in his hearing that Sir Walter had had a little repose, he replied, "No, Willie; no repose for Sir Walter but in the grave." As the tears rushed from his eyes, his old pride revived. "Friends," he said, "don't let me expose myself; get me to bed,—that is the only place." A few days afterwards, awaking conscious and composed, he desired to see his son-in-law. "Lockhart," he said, "I may have but a minute to speak to you. My dear, be a good man,—be virtuous,—be religious,—be a good man. Nothing else will give you any comfort when you come to lie here." He paused, and Lockhart said, "Shall I send for Sophia and
Anne?" "No," said he, "don't disturb them. Poor souls! I know they were up all night. God bless you all!" With this he sank into a very tranquil sleep, and, indeed, he scarcely afterwards gave any sign of consciousness. He died Sept. 21, 1832, sixty-one years and one month old.

Well might Lord Chief Baron Shepherd apply to Scott Cicero's description of some contemporary of his own, who "had borne adversity wisely, who had not been broken by fortune, and who, amidst the buffets of fate, had maintained his dignity." There was in Sir Walter, I think, at least as much of the Stoic as the Christian. But Stoic or Christian, he was a hero of the old indomitable type. Even the last fragments of his imaginative power were all turned to account by that unconquerable will, amidst the discouragement of friends, and the still more disheartening doubts of his own mind. Like the headland stemming a rough sea, he was gradually worn away, but never crushed.

Sir Walter certainly left his "name unstained," unless the serious mistakes natural to a sanguine temperament such as his are to be counted as stains upon his name; and if they are, where among the sons of men would you find many unstained names as noble as his with such a stain upon it? He was not only sensitively honorable in motive, but, when he found what evil his sanguine temper had worked, he used his gigantic powers to repair it, and, as a result of these almost superhuman efforts, within fifteen years after Sir Walter's death, the debt was at last, through the value of the copyrights he had left behind him, finally extinguished, and the small estate of Abbotsford left cleared. Sir Walter's effort to found a new house was even less successful than the effort to endow it.

The only direct descendant of Sir Walter Scott is now Mary Monica Hope-Scott, who was born on the 2d October, 1852, the grandchild of Mrs. Lockhart, and the great-grandchild of the founder of Abbotsford.
LIFE OF SCOTT.

EXTRACTS FROM LOCKHART’S LIFE OF SCOTT.

"I am drawing near to the close of my career; I am fast shuffling off the stage. I have been perhaps the most voluminous author of the day; and it is a comfort to me to think that I have tried to unsettle no man’s faith, to corrupt no man’s principle."

In the social relations of life, where men are most effectually tried, no spot can be detected in him. He was a patient, dutiful, reverent son; a generous, compassionate, tender husband; an honest, careful, and most affectionate father. Never was a more virtuous or a happier fireside than his. The influence of his mighty genius shadowed it imperceptibly; his calm good sense, and his angelic sweetness of heart and temper, regulated and softened a strict but paternal discipline. His children, as they grew up, understood by degrees the high privilege of their birth; but the profoundest sense of his greatness never disturbed their confidence in his goodness.

Perhaps the most touching evidence of the lasting tenderness of his early domestic feelings was exhibited to his executors, when they opened his repositories in search of his testament, the evening after his burial. On lifting up his desk, we found arranged in careful order a series of little objects, which had obviously been so placed there that his eye might rest on them every morning before he began his tasks. These were the old-fashioned boxes that had garnished his mother’s toilet, when he, a sickly child, slept in her dressing-room; the silver taper-stand which the young advocate had bought for her with his first five-guinea fee; a row of small packets inscribed with her hand, and containing the hair of those of her offspring that had died before her; his father’s snuff-box and etui-case; and more things
of the like sort, recalling the "old familiar faces." The same feeling was apparent in all the arrangement of his private apartment. Pictures of his father and mother were the only ones in his dressing-room. The clumsy antique cabinets that stood there, things of a very different class from the beautiful and costly productions in the public rooms below, had all belonged to the furniture of George's Square. Even his father's rickety washing-stand, with all its cramped appurtenances, though exceedingly unlike what a man of his very scrupulous habits would have selected in these days, kept its ground. The whole place seemed fitted up like a little chapel of the Lares.

Such a son and parent could hardly fail in any of the other social relations. No man was a firmer or more indefatigable friend. I knew not that he ever lost one; and a few, with whom, during the energetic middle stage of life, from political differences or other accidental circumstances, he lived less familiarly, had all gathered round him, and renewed the full warmth of early affection in his later days. There was enough to dignify the connection in their eyes, but nothing to chill it on either side. The imagination that so completely mastered him, when he chose to give her the rein, was kept under most determined control when any of the positive obligations of active life came into question. A high and pure sense of duty presided over whatever he had to do as a citizen and a magistrate; and, as a landlord, he considered his estate as an extension of his hearth.

But his moral, political, and religious character has sufficiently impressed itself upon the great body of his writings. He is indeed one of the few great authors of modern Europe who stand acquitted of having written a line that ought to have embittered the bed of death. His works teach the practical lessons of morality and Christianity in the most captivating form — unobtrusively and unaffectedly.
The race that grew up under the influence of that intellect can hardly be expected to appreciate fully their own obligations to it: and yet, if we consider what were the tendencies of the minds and works that, but for his, must have been unrivalled in the power and opportunity to mould young ideas, we may picture to ourselves in some measure the magnitude of the debt we owe to a perpetual succession, through thirty years, of publications unapproached in charm, and all instilling a high and healthy code; a bracing, invigorating spirit; a contempt of mean passions, whether vindictive or voluptuous; humane charity, as distinct from moral laxity as from unsympathizing austerity; sagacity too deep for cynicism, and tenderness never degenerating into sentimentality: animated throughout in thought, opinion, feeling, and style, by one and the same pure energetic principle—a pith and savor of manhood; appealing to whatever is good and loyal in our natures, and rebuking whatever is low and selfish.

I have no doubt that, the more details of his personal history are revealed and studied, the more powerfully will that be found to inculcate the same great lessons with his works. Where else shall we be taught better how prosperity may be extended by beneficence, and adversity confronted by exertion? Where can we see the "follies of the wise" more strikingly rebuked, and a character more beautifully purified and exalted in the passage through affliction to death?
JAMES V.—THE HIGHLANDERS AND BORDERERS OF SCOTLAND.

[It is hoped that this brief outline, abridged from Scott’s “Tales of a Grandfather,” may not only enable the reader to gain a better knowledge of the poem; but also awaken an interest in this important epoch of Henry the Eighth, and Elizabeth of England, and James V. and Mary Queen of Scots, and her son, James VI., under whom both kingdoms were united.]

THERE were two great divisions of the country: namely, the Highlands and the Borders, which were so much wilder and more barbarous than the others, that they might be said to be altogether without law; and, although they were nominally subjected to the King of Scotland, yet when he desired to execute any justice in either of these great districts, he could not do so otherwise than by marching there in person, at the head of a strong body of forces, and seizing upon the offenders, and putting them to death with little or no form of trial. Such a rough course of justice, perhaps, made these disorderly countries quiet for a short time, but it rendered them still more averse to the royal government in their hearts, and disposed on the slightest occasion to break out, either into disorders amongst themselves, or into open rebellion. I must give you some more particular account of these wild and uncivilized districts of Scotland, and of the particular sort of people who were their inhabitants, that you may know what I mean when I speak of Highlanders and Borderers.
The Highlands of Scotland, so called from the rocky and mountainous character of the country, consist of a very large proportion of the northern parts of that kingdom. It was into these pathless wildernesses that the Romans drove the ancient inhabitants of Great Britain; and it was from these that they afterwards sallied to invade and distress that part of Britain which the Romans had conquered, and in some degree civilized. The inhabitants of the Highlands spoke, and still speak, a language totally different from the Lowland Scots. That last language does not greatly differ from English, and the inhabitants of both countries easily understand each other, though neither of them comprehend the Gaelic, which is the language of the Highlanders. The dress of these mountaineers was also different from that of the Lowlanders. They wore a plaid, or mantle of frieze, or of a striped stuff called tartan, one end of which being wrapt round the waist, formed a short petticoat, which descended to the knee, while the rest was folded round them like a sort of cloak. They had buskins made of raw hide; and those who could get a bonnet, had that covering for their heads, though many never wore one during their whole lives, but had only their own shaggy hair tied back by a leathern strap. They went always armed, carrying bows and arrows, large swords, which they wielded with both hands, called claymores, poleaxes, and daggers for close fight. For defence, they had a round wooden shield, or target, stuck full of nails; and their great men had shirts of mail, not unlike to the flannel shirts now worn, only composed of links of iron instead of threads of worsted; but the common men were so far from desiring armor, that they sometimes threw their plaidings away, and fought in their shirts, which they wore very long and large, after the Irish fashion.

This part of the Scottish nation was divided into clans, that is, tribes. The persons composing each of these clans
believed themselves all to be descended, at some distant period, from the same common ancestor, whose name they usually bore. Thus, one tribe was called MacDonald, which signifies the sons of Donald; another, MacGregor, or the sons of Gregor; MacNeil, the sons of Neil, and so on. Every one of these tribes had its own separate chief, or commander, whom they supposed to be the immediate representative of the great father of the tribe from whom they were all descended. To this chief they paid the most unlimited obedience, and willingly followed his commands in peace or war; not caring although, in doing so, they transgressed the laws of the King, or went into rebellion against the King himself. Each tribe lived in a valley, or district of the mountains, separated from the others; and they often made war upon, and fought desperately with, each other. But with Lowlanders they were always at war. They differed from them in language, in dress, and in manners; and they believed that the richer grounds of the low country had formerly belonged to their ancestors, and therefore they made incursions upon it, and plundered it without mercy. The Lowlanders, on the other hand, equal in courage, and superior in discipline, gave many severe checks to the Highlanders; and thus there was almost constant war or discord between them, though natives of the same country.

Some of the most powerful of the Highland chiefs set themselves up as independent sovereigns. Such were the famous Lords of the Isles, called MacDonald, to whom the island, called the Hebrides, lying on the north-west of Scotland, might be said to belong in property. These petty sovereigns made alliances with the English in their own name. They took the part of Robert the Bruce in the wars, and joined him with their forces. We shall find that, after his time, they gave great disturbance to Scotland. The Lords of Lorn, MacDougals by name, were also extremely
powerful; and were able to give battle to Bruce, and to defeat him, and place him in the greatest jeopardy. He revenged himself afterwards by driving John of Lorn out of the country, and by giving great part of his possessions to his own nephew, Sir Colin Campbell, who became the first of the great family of Argyll, which afterwards enjoyed such power in the Highlands.

Upon the whole, you can easily understand, that these Highland clans, living among such high and inaccessible mountains, and paying obedience to no one save their own chiefs, should have been very instrumental in disturbing the tranquility of the kingdom of Scotland. They had many virtues, being a kind, brave; and hospitable people, and remarkable for their fidelity to their chiefs; but they were restless, revengeful, fond of plunder, and delighting rather in war than in peace, in disorder than in repose.

The Border counties were in a state little more favorable to a quiet or peaceful government. In some respects the inhabitants of the counties of Scotland lying opposite to England greatly resembled the Highlanders, and particularly in their being, like them, divided into clans, and having chiefs, whom they obeyed in preference to the King, or the officers whom he placed among them. How clanship came to prevail in the Highlands and Borders, and not in the provinces which separated them from each other, it is not easy to conjecture, but the fact was so. The Borders are not, indeed, so mountainous and inaccessible a country as the Highlands; but they also are full of hills, especially on the more western part of the frontier, and were in early times covered with forests, and divided by small rivers and morasses into dales and valleys, where the different clans lived, making war sometimes on the English, sometimes on each other, and sometimes on the more civilized country which lay behind them.
But though the Borderers resembled the Highlanders in their mode of government and habits of plundering, and, as it may be truly added, in their disobedience to the general government of Scotland, yet they differed in many particulars. The Highlanders fought always on foot; the Borderers were all horsemen. The Borderers spake the same language with the Lowlanders, wore the same sort of dress, and carried the same arms. Being accustomed to fight against the English, they were also much better disciplined than the Highlanders. But in point of obedience to the Scottish government, they were not much different from the clans of the north.

Military officers, called Wardens, were appointed along the Borders, to keep these unruly people in order; but as these wardens were generally themselves chiefs of clans, they did not do much to mend the evil. Robert the Bruce committed great part of the charge of the Borders to the good Lord James of Douglas, who fulfilled his trust with great fidelity. But the power which the family of Douglas thus acquired proved afterwards, in the hands of his successors, very dangerous to the crown of Scotland.

The Highlanders continued to lead this same marauding kind of life, owning no allegiance to any power except that of their chief, until about the year 1745, when Charles Edward, the last of the Stewarts, made a most desperate attempt to regain the throne of his grandfather, James II.

The Highland clans had remained loyal to the Stewarts during all their misfortunes, and when this brave young prince, trusting to their fidelity, landed almost alone upon their shores, they flocked to his standard in great numbers.

They were successful in the earlier engagements, but finally, in the battle of Culloden, were utterly defeated, the bravest of the clans, together with their chiefs, being slain on the field. The government followed up its victory with
unrelenting cruelty, slaughtering the fugitives, executing the prisoners, and laying waste the country, being determined to crush out the last spark of this power that had for so many centuries disturbed the peace of both kingdoms.

Fine military roads were built into those inaccessible glens and wild mountains, enabling the government to execute the laws throughout the realm. Severe laws, also, were passed, forbidding the wearing of the plaid, the national costume, and the bearing of arms.

These measures were entirely successful in breaking down this patriarchal system; and, although they seemed unnecessarily harsh at the time, in the end they proved wise and beneficent. The Highlanders, no longer able to subsist on plundering the Lowlanders, were obliged to turn their attention to some other means of gaining a living. Some emigrated to America, others enlisted in foreign armies, but the great majority settled down to an agricultural life. Mingling together in peaceful pursuits, the difference between Highlander and Lowlander soon disappeared, and they became one people, prosperous and happy.

James V. of Scotland. — 1513–1542.

James V. (James Fitz-James of the poem) was the son of James the Fourth of Scotland, and Margaret, sister of Henry the Eighth of England. His father having lost his life on the battlefield of Flodden, the son became king when but a child of less than two years of age. For a while, his mother managed the affairs of the kingdom as regent; but, becoming unpopular, she not only lost the regency, but also the control of her son, who fell into the hands of the powerful family of the Douglases, who, although governing in the name of the young king, nevertheless kept him under such careful
guard that the restraint became very irksome to him, and he determined to escape from their power. In two attempts by force he was unsuccessful; but finally, on pretence of going hunting, he escaped from his captivity, and fled into the strong fortress of Stirling Castle, whose governor was friendly to him. Here he assembled around him the numerous nobility favorable to him, and threatened to declare a traitor any of the name of Douglas who should approach within twelve miles of his person, or who should attempt to meddle with the administration of government. He retained, ever after, this implacable resentment against the Douglases, not permitting one of the name to settle in Scotland while he lived. James was especially ungenerous to one Archibald Douglas of Kilspindie, the one mentioned in the poem who had been a favorite of the young King. He was noted for great strength, manly appearance, and skill in all kinds of exercises. When an old man, becoming tired of his exile in England, he resolved to try the King's mercy, thinking that, as he had not personally offended James, he might find favor on account of their old intimacy. He therefore threw himself in the King's way one day as he returned from hunting in the Park at Stirling. Although it was several years since James had seen him, he knew him at a great distance by his firm and stately step. When they met he showed no sign of recognizing his old servant. Douglas turned, hoping still to obtain a glance of favorable recollection, and ran along by the King's side; and, although James trotted his horse hard, and Douglas wore a heavy shirt of mail, yet he reached the castle gate as soon as the King. James passed by him, without the slightest sign of recognition, and entered the castle. Douglas, exhausted, sat down at the gate and asked for a cup of wine; but no domestic dared to offer it. The King, however, blamed this discourtesy in his servants, saying that, but for his oath, he would have received Archibald
into his service. Yet he sent his command for him to retire to France, where the old man soon died of a broken heart.

Freed from the stern control of the Douglas family, James V. now began to exercise the government in person, and displayed most of the qualities of a wise and good prince. He was handsome in his person, and resembled his father in the fondness for military exercises, and the spirit of chivalrous honor which James IV. loved to display. He also inherited his father's love of justice, and his desire to establish and enforce wise and equal laws, which should protect the weak against the oppression of the great. It was easy enough to make laws, but to put them in vigorous exercise was of much greater difficulty; and, in his attempt to accomplish this laudable purpose, James often incurred the ill-will of the more powerful nobles. He was a well-educated and accomplished man, and, like his ancestor, James I., was a poet and musician. He had, however, his defects. He avoided his father's failing of profusion, having no hoarded treasures to employ on pomp and show; but he rather fell into the opposite fault, being of a temper too parsimonious; and, though he loved state and display, he endeavored to gratify that taste as economically as possible, so that he has been censured as rather close and covetous. He was also, though the foibles seem inconsistent, fond of pleasure, and disposed to too much indulgence. It must be added that, when provoked, he was unrelenting even to cruelty; for which he had some apology, considering the ferocity of the subjects over whom he reigned. But, on the whole, James V. was an amiable man and a good sovereign.

His first care was to bring the Borders of Scotland to some degree of order. As before stated, these were inhabited by tribes of men, forming each a different clan, as they were called, and obeying no orders, save those which were given by their chiefs. These chiefs were supposed to represent the
first founder of the name or family. The attachment of the clansmen to the chief was very great; indeed, they paid respect to no one else. In this the Borderers agreed with the Highlanders, as also in their love of plunder and neglect of the general laws of the country. But the Border men wore no tartan dress, and served almost always on horseback, whereas the Highlanders acted always on foot. The Borderers spoke the Scottish language, and not the Gaelic tongue used by the mountaineers.

The situation of these clans on the frontiers exposed them to constant war; so that they thought of nothing else but of collecting bands of their followers together, and making incursions, without much distinction, on the English, on the Lowland (or inland) Scots, or upon each other. They paid little respect either to times of truce or treaties of peace, but exercised their depredations without regard to either, and often occasioned wars betwixt England and Scotland which would not otherwise have taken place.

James’ first step was to secure the persons of the principal chieftains by whom these disorders were privately encouraged, and who might have opposed his purposes, and imprison them in separate fortresses.

He then assembled an army, in which warlike purposes were united with those of sylvan sport; for he ordered all the gentlemen, in the wild districts which he intended to visit, to bring in their best dogs, as if his only purpose had been to hunt the deer in those desolate regions. This was intended to prevent the Borderers from taking the alarm, in which case they would have retreated into their mountains and fastnesses, from whence it would have been difficult to dislodge them.

These men had indeed no distinct idea of the offences which they had committed, and consequently no apprehension of the King’s displeasure against them. The laws had been
so long silent in that remote and disorderly country, that the outrages which were practised by the strong against the weak seemed to the perpetrators the natural course of society, and to present nothing that was worthy of punishment. Thus the King suddenly approached the castles of these great lords and barons, while they were preparing a great entertainment to welcome him, and caused them to be seized and executed.

There is reason to censure the extent to which James carried his severity; as being to a certain degree impolitic, and beyond doubt cruel and excessive.

In the like manner, James proceeded against the Highland chiefs; and, by executions, forfeitures, and other severe measures, he brought the Northern mountaineers, as he had already done those of the South, into comparative subjection.

Such were the effects of the terror struck by these general executions, that James was said to have made "the rush bush keep the cow"; that is to say, that, even in this lawless part of the country, men dared no longer make free with property, and cattle might remain on their pastures unwatched. James was also enabled to draw profit from the lands which the crown possessed near the Borders, and is said to have had ten thousand sheep at one time grazing in Ettrick forest, under the keeping of one Andrew Bell, who gave the King as good an account of the flock as if they had been grazing in the bounds of Fife, then the most civilized part of Scotland.

James V. had a custom of going about the country disguised as a private person, in order that he might hear complaints which might not otherwise reach his ears, and, perhaps, that he might enjoy amusement which he could not have partaken of in his avowed royal character.

He was also very fond of hunting, and, when he pursued that amusement in the Highlands, he used to wear the pecu-
liar dress of that country, having a long and wide Highland shirt, and a jacket of tartan velvet, with plaid hose, and everything else corresponding.

The reign of James V. was not alone distinguished by his personal adventures and pastimes, but is honorably remembered on account of wise laws made for the government of his people, and for restraining the crimes and violence which were frequently practised among them; especially those of assassination, burning of houses, and driving of cattle, the usual and ready means by which powerful chiefs avenged themselves on their feudal enemies.

Had not James become involved in a war with Henry the Eighth of England, he might have been as fortunate a prince as his many good qualities deserved; but, the war going against him, in despair and desolation he shut himself up in his palace, refusing to listen to consolation. A burning fever, the consequence of his grief and shame, seized on the unfortunate monarch. When they brought him tidings that his wife had given birth to a daughter, who afterwards became the brilliant, but most unfortunate, Mary Queen of Scots, he only replied, "Is it so?" reflecting on the alliance which had placed the Stewart family on the throne; "then God's will be done. It came with a lass, and it will go with a lass." With these words, presaging the extinction of his house, he made a signal of adieu to his courtiers, spoke little more, but turned his face to the wall and, when scarcely thirty-one years old, in the very prime of life, he died of the most melancholy of all diseases, a broken heart.

Driving. Here, stealing.
ARGUMENT.

The scene of the following Poem is laid chiefly in the vicinity of Loch Katrine, in the Western Highlands of Perthshire. The time of Action includes Six Days, and the transactions of each Day occupy a Canto.

This poem was first published in 1810.
OUTLINE OF CANTO FIRST.

In "The Lady of the Lake" the poet describes Highland character and life as they existed towards the close of the middle ages, by means of a narrative of one of James V.'s adventures. In the first canto, which is entitled "The Chase," he begins with a long account of a stag hunt in the Highlands of Perthshire. As the chase lengthens, the sportmen one by one drop off, till at last, the king, who is the foremost horseman, is found alone, and his horse, worn out with fatigue, stumbles and falls dead. The lone huntsman pursues his way through a rocky ravine, till, ascending a craggy height, he sees, by the light of the setting sun, Loch Katrine stretched beneath him in all its beauty. After gazing in admiration upon the beautiful scene, he winds his horn in the hope of being heard by some of his companions, and to his surprise a little skiff guided by a young lady shoots out from the shadow of a tree, and approaches the shore. The lady, thinking it was her father's horn she heard, draws back in fear at the sight of a stranger, but, after receiving his explanation, they row across the lake to her island home. There, her father being absent, young Ellen, as the lady is named, and the mistress of the mansion entertain the huntsman with true highland hospitality. He discloses his name and rank as "The Knight of Snowdoun, James Fitz-James," and tries in every way, but in vain, to learn the names of his hosts. At length he retires to rest; but his sleep is disturbed by dreams so strange and fearful that he rises from his couch, and walks out into the moonlight to shake off the dread visions of the night. After quieting his disturbed mind, he returns to his bed, says a prayer, and sleeps till awakened in the morning by the crowing of the heath-cock. With this the first canto ends.—Stevens & Morris
THE

LADY OF THE LAKE.

Canto First.

THE CHASE.

Harp of the North! that mouldering long hast hung
On the witch-elm that shades Saint Fillan's spring,
And down the fitful breeze thy numbers flung,
Till envious ivy did around thee cling,
Muffling with verdant ringlet every string,
O Minstrel Harp, still must thine accents sleep?
'Mid rustling leaves and fountains murmuring,
Still must thy sweeter sounds their silence keep,
Nor bid a warrior smile, nor teach a maid to weep?

Not thus, in ancient days of Caledon,
Was thy voice mute amid the festal crowd,

1. Harp of the North! An invocation to ancient Scottish minstrelsy. The harp was formerly the national musical instrument.
2. Witch-elm. The broad-leaved elm. Twigs cut from it were used as riding whips for good luck; also for divining rods.—Saint Fillan. A Scotch abbot of the seventh century.
3. Numbers. Lines or verses of poetry.
6. Minstrel. The minstrels, as the wandering singers and musicians of the middle ages were called, were always welcomed wherever they went. They sang songs recounting the valiant deeds of their entertainers and their ancestors. S. & M.
10. Caledon. For Caledonia, the ancient name of Scotland.
When lay of hopeless love, or glory won,
Aroused the fearful or subdued the proud.
At each according pause was heard aloud
Thine ardent symphony sublime and high!
Fair dames and crested chiefs attention bowed;
For still the burden of thy minstrelsy
Was Knighthood's dauntless deed, and Beauty's matchless eye.

O, wake once more! how rude soe'er the hand
That ventures o'er thy magic maze to stray;
O, wake once more! though scarce my skill command
Some feeble echoing of thine earlier lay:
Though harsh and faint, and soon to die away,
And all unworthy of thy nobler strain,
Yet if one heart throb higher at its sway,
The wizard note has not been touched in vain.
Then silent be no more! Enchantress, wake again!

I.

The stag at eve had drunk his fill,
Where danced the moon on Monan's rill,

14. **According pause.** In music, that which suitably fills the intervals.
15. **Ardent symphony.** Stirring music with which the minstrel filled up the pauses of his lay. S. & M.
16. **Crested.** Plumed. 17. **Minstrelsy.** Song.
18. **Knighthood.** In the middle ages a knight was a person admitted to a certain military rank, as a reward for brave and gallant deeds. Knights took certain oaths, among which, perhaps, the most important was that they would succor the oppressed, especially ladies, whenever they had the opportunity. S. & M.
29. **Monan.** A Scottie martyr of the fourth century.
CANTO I. THE CHASE.

And deep his midnight lair had made
In lone Glenartney's hazel shade;
But when the sun his beacon red
Had kindled on Benvoirlich's head,
The deep-mouthed bloodhound's heavy bay
Resounded up the rocky way,
And faint, from farther distance borne,
Were heard the clanging hoof and horn.

II.

As Chief, who hears his warder call,
"To arms! the foemen storm the wall,"
The antlered monarch of the waste
Sprung from his heathery couch in haste.
But ere his fleet career he took,
The dew-drops from his flanks he shook;
Like crested leader proud and high
Tossed his beamed frontlet to the sky;
A moment gazed adown the dale,
A moment snuffed the tainted gale,
A moment listened to the cry,
That thickened as the chase drew nigh;

31. Glenartney. A valley through which a small stream called the Artney flows.
32. Beacon. A signal-fire on a hill or mountain. The use of the word here is very effective, comparing the early rays of the sun on the mountain top to a fire kindled for an alarm.
34. Beamed frontlet. The forehead of a stag, with full-grown antlers or horns.
37. Tainted gale. The wind, laden with the scent or odor of the hunter, which the deer perceives at a great distance.
Then, as the headmost foes appeared,
With one brave bound the copse he cleared,
And, stretching forward free and far,
Sought the wild heaths of Uam-Var.

III.

Yelled on the view the opening pack;
Rock, glen, and cavern paid them back;
To many a mingled sound at once
The awakened mountain gave response.
A hundred dogs bayed deep and strong,
Clattered a hundred steeds along,
Their peal the merry horns rung out,
A hundred voices joined the shout;
With hark and whoop and wild halloo,
No rest Benvoirlich’s echoes knew.
Far from the tumult fled the roe,
Close in her covert cowered the doe,
The falcon, from her cairn on high,
Cast on the rout a wondering eye,

51. Copse. Bushes, or wood of small growth.
53. Uam-Var. Ua-var, as the name is pronounced, or more properly
Uaighmor, is a mountain to the north-east of the village of Callender in
Menteith, deriving its name, which signifies the great den or cavern, from a
sort of retreat among the rocks on the south side, said, by tradition, to have
been the abode of a giant. In latter times it was the refuge of robbers and
banditti, who have been only extirpated within these forty or fifty years.
Strictly speaking, this stronghold is not a cave, as the name would imply,
but a sort of small enclosure or recess, surrounded with large rocks, and open
above head. Scott.
54. Opening pack. A hunting term, alluding to the hounds barking
at sight of the game.—54. Roe. A small species of deer.
Till far beyond her piercing ken
The hurricane had swept the glen.
Faint, and more faint, its failing din
Returned from cavern, cliff, and linn,
And silence settled, wide and still,
On the lone wood and mighty hill.

IV.

Less loud the sounds of sylvan war
Disturbed the heights of Uam-Var,
And roused the cavern where, ’tis told,
A giant made his den of old;
For ere that steep ascent was won,
High in his pathway hung the sun,
And many a gallant, stayed perforce,
Was fain to breathe his faltering horse,
And of the trackers of the deer,
Scarce half the lessening pack was near;
So shrewdly on the mountain-side
Had the bold burst their mettle tried.

V.

The noble stag was pausing now
Upon the mountain’s southern brow,
Where broad extended, far beneath,
The varied realms of fair Menteith.
With anxious eye he wandered o’er
Mountain and meadow, moss and moor,

74. Sylvan war. Woodland war against the stag, i.e., hunting.
89. Menteith. A district watered by the Teith.
And pondered refuge from his toil,  
By far Lochard or Aberfoyle.  
But nearer was the copsewood gray.  
That waved and wept on Loch Achray,  
And mingled with the pine-trees blue  
On the bold cliffs of Benvenue.  
Fresh vigor with the hope returned,  
With flying foot the heath he spurned,  
Held westward with unwearied race,  
And left behind the panting chase.

VI.

'Twere long to tell what steeds gave o'er,  
As swept the hunt through Cambusmore;  
What reins were tightened in despair,  
When rose Benledi’s ridge in air;  
Who flagged upon Bochastle’s heath,  
Who shunned to stem the flooded Teith,—  
For twice that day, from shore to shore,  
The gallant stag swam stoutly o'er.

95. *Loch Achray*. "The Lake of the Level Field." A small lake at  
the foot of Benvenue. — 97. *Benvenue*. "Center Mountain," being mid-
way between Ben Lomond and Ben Ledi. (See map.)  
99. *Heath*. A low shrub very abundant on the hills and mountains of  
Scotland. Its foliage gives to the landscape a very soft olive tinge; its  
blossoms, a purplish hue.  
105. *Benledi*. A mountain near Callander. The name signifies  
"Mountain of God."  
106. *Bochastle’s heath*. A flat plain between the east end of Loch  
Vennachar and Callander. *Taylor.*  
107. *The flooded Teith*. The Teith, receiving the waters of Loch  
Lubnaig, Voil, Vennachar, Achray, and Katrine, was liable to overflow its  
banks in rainy seasons.
CANTO I.

THE CHASE.

Few were the stragglers, following far,
That reached the lake of Vennachar;
And when the Brigg of Turk was won,
The headmost horseman rode alone.

VII.

Alone, but with unabated zeal,
That horseman plied the scourge and steel;
For, jaded now, and spent with toil,
Embossed with foam, and dark with soil,
While every gasp with sobs he drew,
The laboring stag strained full in view.
Two dogs of black Saint Hubert's breed,
Unmatched for courage, breath, and speed,
Fast on his flying traces came,
And all but won that desperate game;
For, scarce a spear's length from his haunch,
Vindictive toiled the bloodhounds stanch;
Nor nearer might the dogs attain,
Nor farther might the quarry strain.
Thus up the margin of the lake,
Between the precipice and brake,
O'er stock and rock their race they take.

111. Vennachar. "Lake of the Fair Valley," one of the three lakes around which the scenery of the poem lies.—112. Brigg of Turk. An old stone bridge over the Turk, a small stream in Glenfinlas valley.

115. Scourge and steel. Whip and spur.—117. Embossed. Hunted until the foam from the mouth covered the stag like raised figures in ornamental work.—120. Saint Hubert. The hounds which are called St. Hubert's are found of various colors, but are commonly all black. The abbots of St. Hubert have always kept some of this race of hounds in remembrance of their patron saint, who was a hunter.—125. Vindictive. Revengeful.—


130: Stock. Log or stump.
VIII.

The Hunter marked that mountain high,
The lone lake’s western boundary,
And deemed the stag must turn to bay,
Where that huge rampart barred the way;
Already glorying in the prize,
Measured his antlers with his eyes;
For the death-wound and death-hallow
Mustered his breath, his whinyard drew:—
But thundering as he came prepared,
With ready arm and weapon bared,
The wily quarry shunned the shock,
And turned him from the opposing rock;
Then, dashing down a darksome glen,
Soon lost to hound and Hunter’s ken,
In the deep Trosachs’ wildest nook
His solitary refuge took.

133. **Turn to bay.** The turning of the stag to face and fight his pursuers when no longer able to escape them.—134. **Rampart.** Benvenue.

137. **For the death wound, etc.** When the stag turned to bay, the ancient hunter had the perilous task of going in upon, and killing or disabling the desperate animal. At certain times of the year this was held particularly dangerous, a wound received from a stag’s horn being then deemed poisonous, and more dangerous than one from the tusks of a boar. **Scott. — Death-hallow.** The shout when the huntsman had given the death stroke to the stag.—138. **Whinyard.** A sword or hanger.

145. **Trosachs.** The name Trosachs, or “bristled territory,” is generally applied to the whole country about Loch Katrine, but, strictly speaking, belongs only to the region between Lochs Katrine and Acharay. A fine turnpike, shaded by overhanging trees and abrupt mountain cliffs, winds through this beautiful wild valley. It is the more enjoyable because it is so rare in Scotland to see anything like a native forest. The trees are mostly set out when very small and so thickly and irregularly as to resemble a natural growth. They are cultivated not so much for the timber as a shelter for game. The mountains of Scotland for the most part are treeless. With the exception of a few of the highest peaks which are barren, they
There, while close couched the thicket shed
Cold dews and wild flowers on his head,
He heard the baffled dogs in vain
Rave through the hollow pass amain,
Chiding the rocks that yelled again.

IX.

Close on the hounds the Hunter came,
To cheer them on the vanished game;
But, stumbling in the rugged dell,
The gallant horse exhausted fell.
The impatient rider strove in vain
To rouse him with the spur and rein,
For the good steed, his labors o’er,
Stretched his stiff limbs, to rise no more;
Then, touched with pity and remorse,
He sorrowed o’er the expiring horse.
“I little thought, when first thy rein
I slacked upon the banks of Seine,
That Highland eagle e’er should feed
On thy fleet limbs, my matchless steed!
Woe worth the chase, woe worth the day,
That costs thy life, my gallant gray!”

are covered to the very tops with heather and grass kept green by the frequent rains. Not only are these beautiful mountains with the thousands of white sheep moving to and fro over their sides pleasant to look upon, but they form a great source of wealth to the people as is well known by the quantity and excellence of the Scotch woolens.

151. Chiding, etc. The constant barking echoed back by the rocks.
163. Seine. A river in France.
166. Woe worth the chase. Woe be to the chase. Worthy used in the sense of be, imperative.
X.
Then through the dell his horn resounds,
From vain pursuit to call the hounds.
Back limped, with slow and crippled pace,
The sulky leaders of the chase;
Close to their master's side they pressed,
With drooping tail and humbled crest;
But still the dingle's hollow throat
Prolonged the swelling bugle-note.
170
The owlets started from their dream,
The eagles answered with their scream,
Round and around the sounds were cast,
Till echo seemed an answering blast;
And on the Hunter hied his way,
180
To join some comrades of the day,
Yet often paused, so strange the road,
So wondrous were the scenes it showed.

XI.
The western waves of ebbing day
Rolled o'er the glen their level way;
Each purple peak, each flinty spire,
Was bathed in floods of living fire.
But not a setting beam could glow
Within the dark ravines below,
Where twined the path in shadow hid,
Round many a rocky pyramid,
Shooting abruptly from the dell
Its thunder-splintered pinnacle;
185. Level way. Horizontal rays from the setting sun.
Round many an insulated mass,
The native bulwarks of the pass,
Huge as the tower which builders vain
Presumptuous piled on Shinar's plain.
The rocky summits, split and rent,
Formed turret, dome, or battlement,
Or seemed fantastically set
With cupola or minaret,
Wild crests as pagod ever decked,
Or mosque of Eastern architect.
Nor were these earth-born castles bare,
Nor lacked they many a banner fair;
For, from their shivered brows displayed,
Far o'er the unfathomable glade,
All twinkling with the dewdrops sheen,
The brier-rose fell in streamers green,
And creeping shrubs of thousand dyes
Waved in the west-wind's summer sighs.

XII.

Boon nature scattered, free and wild,
Each plant or flower, the mountain's child.
Here eglantine embalmed the air,
Hawthorn and hazel mingled there;

The primrose pale and violet flower
Found in each cleft a narrow bower;
Foxglove and nightshade, side by side,
Emblems of punishment and pride,
Grouped their dark hues with every stain
The weather-beaten crags retain.
With boughs that quaked at every breath,
Gray birch and aspen wept beneath;
Aloft, the ash and warrior oak
Cast anchor in the rifted rock;
And, higher yet, the pine-tree hung
His shattered trunk, and frequent flung,
Where seemed the cliffs to meet on high,
His boughs athwart the narrowed sky.
Highest of all, where white peaks glanced,
Where glistening streamers waved and danced,
The wanderer’s eye could barely view
The summer heaven’s delicious blue;
So wondrous wild, the whole might seem
The scenery of a fairy dream.

XIII.

Onward, amid the copse ’gan peep
A narrow inlet, still and deep,
Affording scarce such breadth of brim
As served the wild duck’s brood to swim.
Lost for a space, through thickets veering,
But broader when again appearing,
Tall rocks and tufted knolls their face
Could on the dark-blue mirror trace;

223. Aspen. Called also the trembling poplar, because of the quivering
of the leaves in the slightest breeze. — 240. Veering. Turning or winding.
And farther as the Hunter strayed,  
Still broader sweep its channels made.  
The shaggy mounds no longer stood,  
Emerging from entangled wood,  
But, wave-encircled, seemed to float,  
Like castle girdled with its moat;  
Yet broader floods extending still  
Divide them from their parent hill,  
Till each, retiring, claims to be  
An islet in an inland sea.

XIV.

And now, to issue from the glen,  
No pathway meets the wanderer's ken,  
Unless he climb with footing nice  
A far-projecting precipice.  
The broom's tough roots his ladder made,  
The hazel saplings lent their aid;  
And thus an airy point he won,  
Where, gleaming with the setting sun,  
One burnished sheet of living gold,  
Loch Katrine lay beneath him rolled,

Moat. A ditch round a castle for defence.

Unless he climb, etc. Until the present road was made through the romantic pass which I have presumptuously attempted to describe in the preceding stanzas, there was no mode of issuing out of the defile called the Trosachs, excepting by a sort of ladder, composed of the branches and roots of trees. Scot. — Broom. A large, bushy shrub having tough, leafless stems and flowers of a deep golden yellow. Brooms were so called because they were originally made from it. S. & M.

Loch Katrine. The scene of the poem is one of the most beautiful of the Scottish lakes, situated in Perthshire. It is about eight miles long and two miles wide, serpentine in shape, and surrounded by high mountains and deep ravines. A small steamer plies on the lake. Near its outlet is situated Ellen's Isle in the wild region of the Trosachs. It is supposed to have derived its name from "Catterips or Ketterins, a wild band of robbers, who prowled about its shores to the terror of all wayfarers."
In all her length far winding lay,
With promontory, creek, and bay,
And islands that, empurpled bright,
Floated amid the livelier light,
And mountains that like giants stand
To sentinel enchanted land.
High on the south, huge Benvenue
Down to the lake in masses threw
Craggs, knolls, and mounds, confusedly hurled,
The fragments of an earlier world;
A wildering forest feathered o'er
His ruined sides and summit hoar,
While on the north, through middle air,
Ben-an heaved high his forehead bare.

XV.

From the steep promontory gazed
The stranger, raptured and amazed,
And, "What a scene were here," he cried,
"For princely pomp or churchman's pride!
On this bold brow, a lordly tower;
In that soft vale, a lady's bower;
On yonder meadow far away
The turrets of a cloister gray;
How blithely might the bugle-horn
Chide on the lake the lingering morn!
How sweet at eve the lover's lute
Chime when the groves were still and mute!

285. Cloister. A place of retirement from the world for religious duties;
   a convent. A cloister for women is called a nunnery; for men, a monastery.
And when the midnight moon should lave
Her forehead in the silver wave,
How solemn on the ear would come
The holy matins' distant hum,
While the deep peal's commanding tone
Should wake, in yonder islet lone,
A sainted hermit from his cell,
To drop a head with every knell!
And bugle, lute, and bell, and all,
Should each bewildered stranger call
To friendly feast and lighted hall.

XVI.

"Blithe were it then to wander here!
But now—beshrew yon nimble deer!—
Like that same hermit's, thin and spare,
The copse must give my evening fare;
Some mossy bank my couch must be,
Some rustling oak my canopy.
Yet pass we that; the war and chase
Give little choice of resting-place;—
A summer night in greenwood spent
Were but to-morrow's merriment:
But hosts may in these wilds abound,
Such as are better missed than found;
To meet with Highland plunderers here
Were worse than loss of steed or deer.—

290. Lave. Bathe.—293. Matins. Early morning prayers in Catholic churches.—297. Bead. Formerly meant a prayer, and hence came to be applied to the small perforated balls used in keeping an account of the number of prayers recited.—302. Beshrew. "May ill betide"; a slight curse. 313. Highland plunderers. The class who inhabited the romantic regions in the neighborhood of Loch Katrine, were, even until a late period, much addicted to predatory excursions upon their Lowland neighbors. Scott.
I am alone; — my bugle-strain
May call some straggler of the train;
Or, fall the worst that may betide,
Ere now this falchion has been tried."

XVII.
But scarce again his horn he wound,
When lo! forth starting at the sound,
From underneath an aged oak
That slanted from the islet rock,
A damsel guider of its way,
A little skiff shot to the bay,
That round the promontory steep
Led its deep line in graceful sweep,
Eddying, in almost viewless wave,
The weeping willow twig to lave,
And kiss, with whispering sound and slow,
The beach of pebbles bright as snow.
The boat had touched this silver strand
Just as the Hunter left his stand,
And stood concealed amid the brake,
To view this Lady of the Lake.
The maiden paused, as if again
She thought to catch the distant strain.
With head upraised, and look intent,
And eye and ear attentive bent,
And locks flung back, and lips apart,
Like monument of Grecian art,
In listening mood, she seemed to stand,
The guardian Naiad of the strand.

318. **Falchion** [fawl'chun]. A broadsword with slightly curved point.
340. **Monument of Grecian art.** A statue. — 342. **Naiad** [Nā'yad]. A water-nymph or goddess presiding over rivers and springs.
XVIII.
And ne'er did Grecian chisel trace
A Nymph, a Naiad, or a Grace,
Of finer form or lovelier face!
What though the sun, with ardent frown,
Had slightly tinged her cheek with brown,—
The sportive toil, which, short and light,
Had dyed her glowing hue so bright,
Served too in hastier swell to show
Short glimpses of a breast of snow:
What though no rule of courtly grace
To measured mood had trained her pace,—
A foot more light, a step more true,
Ne'er from the heath-flower dashed the dew;
E'en the slight harebell raised its head,
Elastic from her airy tread:
What though upon her speech there hung
The accents of the mountain tongue,—
Those silver sounds, so soft, so dear,
The listener held his breath to hear!

XIX.
A chieftain's daughter seemed the maid;
Her satin snood, her silken plaid,
Her golden brooch, such birth betrayed.


363. Snood. A head-band worn by Scottish maidens.—Plaid. Pronounced played by the Scotch. It consisted of about a dozen yards of woollen cloth, checked with threads of various bright colors. It was wrapped around the middle of the body, fastened with a belt, and extended down to the knee. It was much worn as an over-garment by the Highlanders of both sexes, and each clan was distinguished by its own peculiar plaid. Plaid is the garment; tartan is the pattern.

And seldom was a snood amid
Such wild luxuriant ringlets hid,
Whose glossy black to shame might bring
The plumage of the raven's wing;
And seldom o'er a breast so fair
Mantled a plaid with modest care,
And never brooch the folds combined
Above a heart more good and kind.
Her kindness and her worth to spy,
You need but gaze on Ellen's eye;
Not Katrine in her mirror blue
Gives back the shaggy banks more true,
Than every free-born glance confessed
The guileless movements of her breast;
Whether joy danced in her dark eye,
Or woe or pity claimed a sigh,
Or filial love was glowing there,
Or meek devotion poured a prayer,
Or tale of injury called forth
The indignant spirit of the North.
One only passion unrevealed
With maiden pride the maid concealed,
Yet not less purely felt the flame;—
O, need I tell that passion's name?

XX.

Impatient of the silent horn,
Now on the gale her voice was borne: —
"Father!" she cried; the rocks around
Loved to prolong the gentle sound.

368. **Raven.** A bird like the crow.
381. **Filial love.** The love of son or daughter for a parent.
Awhile she paused, no answer came;—
“Malcolm, was thine the blast?” the name
Less resolutely uttered fell,
The echoes could not catch the swell.
“A stranger I,” the Huntsman said,
Advancing from the hazel shade.
The maid, alarmed, with hasty oar
Pushed her light shallop from the shore,
And when a space was gained between,
Closer she drew her bosom’s screen;—
So forth the startled swan would swing,
So turn to prune his ruffled wing.
Then safe, though fluttered and amazed,
She paused, and on the stranger gazed.
Not his the form, nor his the eye,
That youthful maidens wont to fly.

**XXI.**

On his bold visage middle age
Had slightly pressed its signet sage,
Yet had not quenched the open truth
And fiery vehemence of youth;
Forward and frolic glee was there,
The will to do, the soul to dare,
The sparkling glance, soon blown to fire,
Of hasty love or headlong ire.
His limbs were cast in manly mould
For hardy sports or contest bold;
And though in peaceful garb arrayed,
And weaponless except his blade,

404. **Prune.** To trim and arrange the feathers with the bill. — 406. **Wont.** Are accustomed. — 410. **Signet sage.** Seal of wisdom; impression of gravity.
His stately mien as well implied
A high-born heart, a martial pride,
As if a baron's crest he wore,
And sheathed in armor trode the shore.
Slighting the petty need he showed,
He told of his benighted road;
His ready speech flowed fair and free,
In phrase of gentlest courtesy,
Yet seemed that tone and gesture bland
Less used to sue than to command.

XXII.

Awhile the maid the stranger eyed,
And, reassured, at length replied,
That Highland halls were open still
To wildered wanderers of the hill.
"Nor think you unexpected come
To yon lone isle, our desert home;
Before the heath had lost the dew,
This morn, a couch was pulled for you;
On yonder mountain's purple head
Have ptarmigan and heath-cock bled,
And our broad nets have swept the mere,
To furnish forth your evening cheer."—
"Now, by the rood, my lovely maid,
Your courtesy has erred," he said;
"No right have I to claim, misplaced,
The welcome of expected guest.

425. Slighting the need. Treating lightly his lack of food and shelter.
443. By the rood. By the cross. A phrase formerly used in swearing.
A wanderer, here by fortune tost,
My way, my friends, my courser lost,
I ne'er before, believe me, fair,
Have ever drawn your mountain air,
Till on this lake's romantic strand
I found a fay in fairy land!" —

"I well believe," the maid replied,
As her light skiff approached the side, —
"I well believe, that ne'er before
Your foot has trod Loch Katrine's shore;
But yet, as far as yesternight,
Old Allan-bane foretold your plight, —
A gray-haired sire, whose eye intent
Was on the visioned future bent.
He saw your steed, a dappled gray,
Lie dead beneath the birchen way;
Painted exact your form and mien,
Your hunting-suit of Lincoln green,
That tasselled horn so gayly gilt,
That falchion's crooked blade and hilt,
That cap with heron plumage trim,

452. Fay. An imaginary spirit; a fairy.
460. On the visioned future bent. If force of evidence could authorize us to believe facts inconsistent with the general laws of nature, enough might be produced in favor of the existence of the Second-sight. “The second-sight is a singular faculty of seeing an otherwise invisible object without any previous means used by the person that used it for that end: the vision makes such a lively impression upon the seers, that they neither see nor think of anything else, except the vision, as long as it continues; and then they appear pensive or jovial, according to the object that was represented to them.” Scott. — 463. Mien. Look. — 464. Lincoln green. The color of cloth formerly made in Lincoln and worn by the Lowland huntsmen. — 467. Heron. A wading bird with long bill, neck, and legs.
And yon two hounds so dark and grim.
He bade that all should ready be
To grace a guest of fair degree;
But light I held his prophecy,
And deemed it was my father's horn
Whose echoes o'er the lake were borne."

XXIV.
The stranger smiled: — "Since to your home
A destined errant-knight I come,
Announced by prophet sooth and old,
Doomed, doubtless, for achievement bold,
I'll lightly front each high emprise
For one kind glance of those bright eyes.
Permit me first the task to guide
Your fairy frigate o'er the tide."
The maid, with smile suppressed and sly,
The toil unwonted saw him try;
For seldom, sure, if e'er before,
His noble hand had grasped an oar:
Yet with main strength his strokes he drew,
And o'er the lake the shallop flew;
With heads erect and whimpering cry,
The hounds behind their passage ply.
Nor frequent does the bright oar break
The darkening mirror of the lake,
Until the rocky isle they reach,
And moor their shallop on the beach.

492. Rocky isle. Ellen's Isle, situated at the foot of the beautiful Loch Katrine, is a small island containing two or three acres of land rising abruptly from the water to a height of from twenty-five to fifty feet. It is
CANTO I.

THE CHASE.

XXV. √

The stranger viewed the shore around;
'Twas all so close with copsewood bound,
Nor track nor pathway might declare
That human foot frequented there,
Until the mountain maiden showed
A clambering unsuspected road,
That winded through the tangled screen,
And opened on a narrow green,
Where weeping birch and willow round
With their long fibres swept the ground.
Here, for retreat in dangerous hour,
Some chief had framed a rustic bower.

XXVI.

It was a lodge of ample size,
But strange of structure and device;
Of such materials as around
The workman's hand had readiest found.

covered with a thick undergrowth of shrubbery, ferns, honeysuckle, and heather, with a few native birches and pines. The landing is in a slight recess hidden by trees. The ascent is up a steep bank, the roots of the trees forming steps in the winding path well trodden by the thousands of travellers yearly visiting this wild and romantic spot. As the traveller lingers here he recalls the events of this poem more as matters of history than the creation of the great Poet. Beautiful as are lake, isle, and "silver strand," one is glad to yield a grateful tribute to the memory of him who has invested this spot with a charm that shall endure so long as the love of knight and maiden shall interest mortals.

504. For retreat in dangerous hour. The Celtic chieftains, whose lives were continually exposed to peril, had usually, in the most retired spot of their domains, some place of retreat for the hour of necessity, which, as circumstances would admit, was a tower, a cavern, or a rustic hut, in a strong and secluded situation. One of these last gave refuge to the unfortunate Charles Edward, in his perilous wanderings after the battle of Culloden. Scott. — 507. Device. Design.
Lopped of their boughs, their hoar trunks bared, \( \text{510} \)
And by the hatchet rudely squared,
To give the walls their destined height,
The sturdy oak and ash unite;
While moss and clay and leaves combined
To fence each crevice from the wind. \( \text{515} \)
The lighter pine-trees overhead
Their slender length for rafters spread,
And withered heath and rushes dry
Supplied a russet canopy.
Due westward, fronting to the green, \( \text{520} \)
A rural portico was seen,
Aloft on native pillars borne,
Of mountain fir with bark unshorn,
Where Ellen’s hand had taught to twine
The ivy and Æolian vine,
The clematis, the favored flower
Which boasts the name of virgin-bower,
And every hardy plant could bear
Loch Katrine’s keen and searching air.
An instant in this porch she stayed,
And gayly to the stranger said:
“On heaven and on thy lady call,
And enter the enchanted hall!”

XXVII.

“My hope, my heaven, my trust must be,
My gentle guide, in following thee!” — \( \text{530} \)
He crossed the threshold,—and a clang
Of angry steel that instant rang.
CANTO I.  
THE CHASE.  

To his bold brow his spirit rushed,  
But soon for vain alarm he blushed,  
When on the floor he saw displayed,  
Cause of the din, a naked blade  
Dropped from the sheath, that careless flung  
Upon a stag's huge antlers swung;  
For all around, the walls to grace,  
Hung trophies of the fight or chase:  
A target there, a bugle here,  
A battle-axe, a hunting-spear,  
And broadswords, bows, and arrows store,  
With the tusked trophies of the boar.  
Here grins the wolf as when he died,  
And there the wild-cat's brindled hide  
The frontlet of the elk adorns,  
Or mantles o'er the bison's horns;  
Pennons and flags defaced and stained,  
That blackening streaks of blood retained,  
And deer-skins, dappled, dun, and white,  
With otter's fur and seal's unite,  
In rude and uncouth tapestry all,  
To garnish forth the sylvan hall.

XXVIII.

The wondering stranger round him gazed,  
And next the fallen weapon raised: —  
Few were the arms whose sinewy strength  
Sufficed to stretch it forth at length.  
And as the brand he poised and swayed,  
"I never knew but one," he said,

545.  **Trophies.**  Things taken as signs of victory.— 546.  **Target.**  A small shield used for defence in battle.— 556.  **Dun.**  Dark brown.  
559.  **Garnish.**  Decorate or furnish.
"Whose stalwart arm might brook to wield
A blade like this in battle-field."
She sighed, then smiled and took the word:
"You see the guardian champion's sword;
As light it trembles in his hand
As in my grasp a hazel wand:
My sire's tall form might grace the part
Of Ferragus or Ascabart,
But in the absent giant's hold
'Are women now, and menials old.'"

XXIX.

The mistress of the mansion came,
Mature of age, a graceful dame,
Whose easy step and stately port
Had well become a princely court,
To whom, though more than kindred knew,
Young Ellen gave a mother's due.
Meet welcome to her guest she made,
And every courteous rite was paid
That hospitality could claim,
Though all unasked his birth and name.

580. More than kindred knew. Ellen's mother being dead, she loved this Lady Margaret, her maternal aunt, as though she were her mother, and treated her as such. S. & M.
585. Unasked his birth and name. The Highlanders, who carried hospitality to a punctilious excess, are said to have considered it as churlish to ask a stranger his name or lineage, before he had taken refreshment. Feuds were so frequent among them, that a contrary rule would in many cases have produced the discovery of some circumstance which might have excluded the guest of the benefit of the assistance he stood in need of. Scott.
Such then the reverence to a guest,
That fellest foe might join the feast,
And from his deadliest foeman's door
Unquestioned turn, the banquet o'er.
At length his rank the stranger names,
"The Knight of Snowdoun, James Fitz-James;
Lord of a barren heritage,
Which his brave sires, from age to age,
By their good swords had held with toil
His sire had fallen in such turmoil,
And he, God wot, was forced to stand
Oft for his right with blade in hand.
This morning with Lord Moray's train
He chased a stalwart stag in vain,
Outstripped his comrades, missed the deer,
Lost his good steed, and wandered here."

XXX.

Fain would the Knight in turn require
The name and state of Ellen's sire.
Well showed the elder lady's mien
That courts and cities she had seen;
Ellen, though more her looks displayed
The simple grace of sylvan maid,
In speech and gesture, form and face,
Showed she was come of gentle race.
'Twas strange in ruder rank to find
Such looks, such manners, and such mind.
Each hint the Knight of Snowdoun gave,
Dame Margaret heard with silence grave;

Or Ellen, innocently gay,
Turned all inquiry light away:
"Weird women we! by dale and down
We dwell, afar from tower and town.
We stem the flood, we ride the blast,
On wandering knights our spells we cast;
While viewless minstrels touch the string,
'Tis thus our charmed rhymes we sing."
She sung, and still a harp unseen
Filled up the symphony between.

XXXI.

Song.

Soldier, rest! thy warfare o'er,
Sleep the sleep that knows not breaking;
Dream of battled fields no more,
Days of danger, nights of waking.
In our isle's enchanted hall,
Hands unseen thy couch are strewing,
Fairy strains of music fall,
Every sense in slumber dewing.
Soldier, rest! thy warfare o'er,
Dream of fighting fields no more;
Sleep the sleep that knows not breaking,
Morn of toil, nor night of waking.

"No rude sound shall reach thine ear,
Armor's clang or war-steed champing,
Trump nor piprock summon here
Mustering clan or squadron tramping.

Yet the lark’s shrill fife may come
   At the daybreak from the fallow,
And the bittern sound his drum,
   Booming from the sedgy shallow.
Ruder sounds shall none be near,
Guards nor warders challenge here,
Here’s no war-steed’s neigh and champing,
Shouting clans or squadrons stamping.”

XXXII.
She paused,—then, blushing, led the lay,
To grace the stranger of the day.
Her mellow notes awhile prolong
The cadence of the flowing song,
Till to her lips in measured frame
The minstrel verse spontaneous came.

Song Continued.

“Huntsman, rest! thy chase is done;
While our slumbrous spells assail ye,
Dream not, with the rising sun,
Bugles here shall sound reveillé.
Sleep! the deer is in his den;
Sleep! thy hounds are by thee lying;
Sleep! nor dream in yonder glen
How thy gallant steed lay dying.

641. Fallow. Ploughed land for some time uncultivated.
642. Bittern. A wading bird, allied to the heron.
643. Sedgy. Covered with a kind of plant which resembles coarse grass or rush, and grows in tufts.—645. Warders. Keepers or sentinels.
651. Cadence. The falling or variation of the voice.
657. Reveillé [Revĕl’yä]. The beat of drums, or bugle-call at day-break for awakening the soldiers.
Huntsman, rest! thy chase is done;
Think not of the rising sun,
For at dawning to assail ye
Here no bugles sound reveillé.”

XXXIII.

The hall was cleared,—the stranger’s bed,
Was there of mountain heather spread,
Where oft a hundred guests had lain,
And dreamed their forest sports again.
But vainly did the heath-flower shed
Its moorland fragrance round his head;
Not Ellen’s spell had lulled to rest
The fever of his troubled breast.
In broken dreams the image rose
Of varied perils, pains, and woes:
His steed now flounders in the brake,
Now sinks his barge upon the lake;
Now leader of a broken host,
His standard falls, his honor’s lost.
Then,—from my couch may heavenly might Chase that worst phantom of the night!—
Again returned the scenes of youth,
Of confident, undoubting truth;
Again his soul he interchanged
With friends whose hearts were long estranged.
They come, in dim procession led,
The cold, the faithless, and the dead;
As warm each hand, each brow as gay,
As if they parted yesterday.

681. Phantom. A vision of the fancy; a ghost.
CANTO I

THE CHASE.

And doubt distracts him at the view,—
O were his senses false or true?
Dreamed he of death or broken vow,
Or is it all a vision now?

XXXIV.

At length, with Ellen in a grove
He seemed to walk and speak of love;
She listened with a blush and sigh,
His suit was warm, his hopes were high.
He sought her yielded hand to clasp,
And a cold gauntlet met his grasp:
The phantom's sex was changed and gone,
Upon its head a helmet shone;
Slowly enlarged to giant size,
With darkened cheek and threatening eyes,
The grisly visage, stern and hoar,
To Ellen still a likeness bore.—
He woke, and, panting with affright,
Recalled the vision of the night.
The hearth's decaying brands were red,
And deep and dusky lustre shed,
Half showing, half concealing, all
The uncouth trophies of the hall.
'Mid those the stranger fixed his eye
Where that huge falchion hung on high,
And thoughts on thoughts, a countless throng,
Rushed, chasing countless thoughts along,
Until, the giddy whirl to cure,
He rose and sought the moonshine pure.

XXXV.
The wild rose, eglantine, and broom
Wasted around their rich perfume;
The birch-trees wept in fragrant balm;
The aspens slept beneath the calm;
The silver light, with quivering glance,
Played on the water's still expanse,—
Wild were the heart whose passion's sway
Could rage beneath the sober ray!
He felt its calm, that warrior guest,
While thus he communed with his breast:
"Why is it, at each turn I trace
Some memory of that exiled race?
Can I not mountain maiden spy,
But she must bear the Douglas eye?
Can I not view a Highland brand,
But it must match the Douglas hand?
Can I not frame a fevered dream,
But still the Douglas is the theme?
I'll dream no more,—by manly mind
Not even in sleep is will resigned.
My midnight orisons said o'er,
I'll turn to rest, and dream no more."
His midnight orisons he told,
A prayer with every bead of gold,
Consigned to heaven his cares and woes,
And sunk in undisturbed repose,
Until the heath-cock shrilly crew,
And morning dawned on Benvenue.

OUTLINE OF CANTO SECOND.

The stranger, who has announced himself as “the knight of Snowdoun, James Fitz-James,” leaves the island in the early morning. The old minstrel speeds him on his way with a song of farewell, and Ellen watches his departure with an interest for which she soon reproaches herself, as implying disloyalty to her lover, Malcolm Grame. She calls upon the old man to sing her Malcolm’s praises; but Allan has not forgotten the fallen sword of yesternight: it is to him an omen of evil. He attempts in vain a joyous strain; involuntarily he touches but chords of woe. The maiden tries to assuage his fears by a more cheerful view of their fortunes; for she can hardly remember the proud days which he regrets. But Allan’s discernment sees a new danger to her peace which she has not yet suspected: the rough chief whose hospitality now shelters them is hoping for his reward in his cousin’s hand. Besides this, he suspects this stranger guest; his coming can bring no good. Their conversation is interrupted by the sounds of music, and the proud pibroch, followed by a vigorous “Boat Song,” introduces us to this rough cousin, Roderick the Black, on his return from a Lowland raid. His mother, with her maids, comes down to welcome him. Ellen, who, with her eyes opened, is unwilling to do aught that may seem to favor his suit, is reluctantly following, when she hears her father’s bugle-horn, and darts aside to her skiff to convey him from the mainland. With him comes Malcolm Grame, who has been his guide, and who is no welcome guest to Roderick, though he does not fail in hospitality. Roderick receives news of a suspicious gathering of the king’s forces, and of the discovery of Douglas’s retreat. The latter proposes to withdraw, and so save his host from peril; but Roderick seizes the
opportunity of making his proposal for his cousin’s hand. With the Douglas by his side, he may set the king at defiance. Douglas watches its effect upon his daughter, and, seeing that “her affections do not that way tend,” courteously declines the offer. Ellen, unable to bear the sight of her cousin’s despair, rises to leave the room, and Malcolm has the bad taste to come forward, as of right, to be her escort. Roderick cannot brook this parade of successful rivalry, and a somewhat unseemly encounter follows, which ends in Malcolm swimming across to the mainland rather than be indebted to his rival.

Some of the mystery of the previous canto is removed in this, and we learn in the most natural way the former grandeur of the Douglas family, and their present outlawry; the character of their protector, and his hopes of reward. Our interest in the fallen house is increased by the noble contentment with which they bear their change of fortune. Complaint comes from the minstrel, not from Ellen or her father. The latter finds greater happiness in his daughter’s truth and affection than in his former pomp, and is prepared rather to face fresh ills as an outcast than to raise his hand against the king, who has done him wrong, but whom still he loves.—Taylor.
Canto Second.

THE ISLAND.

I.
At morn the black-cock trims his jetty wing,
'Tis morning prompts the linnet's blithest lay,
All Nature's children feel the matin spring
Of life reviving, with reviving day;
And while yon little bark glides down the bay,
Wafting the stranger on his way again,
'Morn's genial influence roused a minstrel gray,
And sweetly o'er the lake was heard thy strain,
Mixed with the sounding harp, O white-haired Allan-bane!

II.

Song.

"Not faster yonder rowers' might
Flings from their oars the spray,
Not faster yonder rippling bright,
That tracks the shallop's course in light,
Melts in the lake away,
Than men from memory erase
The benefits of former days;

Then, stranger, go! good speed the while,
Nor think again of the lonely isle.

"High place to thee in royal court,
High place in battled line,
Good hawk and hound for sylvan sport!
Where beauty sees the brave resort,
The honored meed be thine!
True be thy sword, thy friend sincere,
Thy lady constant, kind, and dear,
And lost in love's and friendship's smile
Be memory of the lonely isle!

III.
Song Continued.

"But if beneath yon southern sky
A plaided stranger roam,
Whose drooping crest and stifled sigh,
And sunken cheek and heavy eye,
Pine for his Highland home;
Then, warrior, then be thine to show
The care that soothes a wanderer's woe;
Remember then thy hap erewhile,
A stranger in the lonely isle.

"Or if on life's uncertain main
Mishap shall mar thy sail;
If faithful, wise, and brave in vain,
Woe, want, and exile thou sustain
Beneath the fickle gale;

Waste not a sigh on fortune changed,
On thankless courts, or friends estranged,
But come where kindred worth shall smile,
To greet thee in the lonely isle.”

IV.
As died the sounds upon the tide,
The shallop reached the mainland side,
And ere his onward way he took,
The stranger cast a lingering look,
Where easily his eye might reach
The Harper on the islet beach,
Reclined against a blighted tree,
As wasted, gray, and worn as he.
To minstrel meditation given,
His reverend brow was raised to heaven,
As from the rising sun to claim
A sparkle of inspiring flame.
His hand, reclined upon the wire,
Seemed watching the awakening fire;
So still he sat as those who wait
Till judgment speak the doom of fate;
So still, as if no breeze might dare
To lift one lock of hoary hair;
So still, as life itself were fled
In the last sound his harp had sped.

V.
Upon a rock with lichens wild,
Beside him Ellen sat and smiled.—

66. Lichens [Li’kens]. Patches of grayish plants, improperly called mosses, growing on rocks and trees.
Smiled she to see the stately drake
Lead forth his fleet upon the lake,
While her vexed spaniel from the beach
Bayed at the prize beyond his reach?
Yet tell me, then, the maid who knows,
Why deepened on her cheek the rose? —
Forgive, forgive, Fidelity!
Perchance the maiden smiled to see
Yon parting lingerer wave adieu,
And stop and turn to wave anew;
And, lovely ladies, ere your ire
Condemn the heroine of my lyre,
Show me the fair would scorn to spy
And prize such conquest of her eye!

VI.
While yet he loitered on the spot,
It seemed as Ellen marked him not;
But when he turned him to the glade,
One courteous parting sign she made;
And after, oft the knight would say,
That not when prize of festal day
Was dealt him by the brightest fair
Who e’er wore jewel in her hair,
So highly did his bosom swell
As at that simple mute farewell.
Now with a trusty mountain-guide,
And his dark stag-hounds by his side,
He parts, — the maid, unconscious still,
Watched him wind slowly round the hill;

69. Fleet. The ducks sailing over the waters.
But when his stately form was hid,  
The guardian in her bosom chid,—  
"Thy Malcolm! vain and selfish maid!"
'Twas thus upbraiding conscience said,—
"Not so had Malcolm idly hung  
On the smooth phrase of Southern tongue;  
Not so had Malcolm strained his eye  
Another step than thine to spy."—
"Wake, Allan-bane," aloud she cried  
To the old minstrel by her side,—
"Arouse thee from thy moody dream!  
I'll give thy harp heroic theme,  
And warm thee with a noble name;  
Pour forth the glory of the Græme!"
Scarce from her lip the word had rushed,  
When deep the conscious maiden blushed;  
For of his clan, in hall and bower,  
Young Malcolm Græme was held the flower.

109. Græme. The ancient and powerful family of Graham (which, for metrical reasons, is here spelt after the Scottish pronunciation) held extensive possessions in the counties of Dumbarton and Stirling. Few families can boast of more historical renown, having claim to three of the most remarkable characters in the Scottish annals. Sir John the Græme, the faithful and undaunted partaker of the labors and patriotic warfare of Wallace, fell in the unfortunate field of Falkirk, in 1298. The celebrated Marquis of Montrose, in whom De Retz saw realized his abstract idea of the heroes of antiquity, was the second of these worthies. And, notwithstanding the severity of his temper, and the rigor with which he executed the oppressive mandates of the princes whom he served, I do not hesitate to name as a third, John Græme of Claverhouse, Viscount of Dundee, whose heroic death in the arms of victory may be allowed to cancel the memory of his cruelty to the Nonconformists, during the reigns of Charles II. and James II. Scott.

112. Bower. Chamber or lady's parlor. "In hall and bower." In assemblies of men and women.—Clan. A number of families united under one chieftain, having a common ancestor, and bearing the same surname.
VII.

The minstrel waked his harp, — three times
Arose the well-known martial chimes,
And thrice their high heroic pride
In melancholy murmurs died.
“Vainly thou bidst, O noble maid,”
Clasping his withered hands, he said,
“Vainly thou bidst me wake the strain,
Though all unwont to bid in vain.
Alas! than mine a mightier hand
Has tuned my harp, my strings has spanned!
I touch the chords of joy, but low
And mournful answer notes of woe;
And the proud march which victors tread
Sinks in the wailing for the dead.
O, well for me, if mine alone
That dirge’s deep prophetic tone!
If, as my tuneful fathers said,
This harp, which erst Saint Modan swayed,
Can thus its master’s fate foretell,
Then welcome be the minstrel’s knell!

VIII.

“But ah! dear lady, thus it sighed,
The eve thy sainted mother died;

131. Saint Modan. I am not prepared to show that Saint Modan was
a performer on the harp. It was, however, no unsaintly accomplishment;
for Saint Dunstan certainly did play upon that instrument, which retaining,
as was natural, a portion of the sanctity attached to its master’s character,
announced future events by its spontaneous sound. Scott.
133. Knell. A death signal or note of evil omen.
And such the sounds which, while I strove
To wake a lay of war or love,
Came marring all the festal mirth,
Appalling me who gave them birth,
And, disobedient to my call,
Wailed loud through Bothwell’s bannered hall,
Ere Douglasses, to ruin driven,
Were exiled from their native heaven.—
O! if yet worse mishap and woe
My master’s house must undergo,
Or aught but weal to Ellen fair
Brood in these accents of despair,
No future bard, sad Harp! shall fling
Triumph or rapture from thy string;
One short, one final strain shall flow,
Fraught with unutterable woe,
Then shivered shall thy fragments lie,
Thy master cast him down and die!”

141. **Bothwell’s bannèred hall.** Bothwell Castle, now in ruins, situated near Glasgow on the Clyde.

142. **Douglasses.** The Douglas family had been exceedingly powerful ever since the great wars with England, when James Douglas had been the chief friend of Bruce, the champion of national independence. The Earls of Douglas and of Angus, with their many relatives, had since grown so powerful and unscrupulous as to be the terror of kings and people; so that it was said that no justice could be obtained against a Douglas or a Douglas’s man. Archibald Douglas, Earl of Angus, had married Margaret Tudor, the mother of James V., and the young king, in his boyhood, had been held in such subjection that when at last he made his escape from the numerous Douglasses who guarded and watched him, he hated the very name of the family, and banished every one of them, including a brave old man, Douglas of Kilspindle, who had been a great favorite with him in his childhood, and from whom the character of the Douglas of the poem is taken. **Yonge.**

151. **Fraught.** Filled.
IX.
Soothing she answered him: "Assuage,
Mine honored friend, the fears of age;
All melodies to thee are known
That harp has rung or pipe has blown,
In Lowland vale or Highland glen,
From Tweed to Spey — what marvel, then,
At times unbidden notes should rise,
Confusedly bound in memory's ties,
Entangling, as they rush along,
The war-march with the funeral song? —
Small ground is now for boding fear;
Obscure, but safe, we rest us here.
My sire, in native virtue great,
Resigning lordship, lands, and state,
Not then to fortune more resigned
Than yonder oak might give the wind;
The graceful foliage storms may reave,
The noble stem they cannot grieve.
For me" — she stooped, and, looking round,
Plucked a blue harebell from the ground, —
"For me, whose memory scarce conveys
An image of more splendid days,
This little flower that loves the lea
May well my simple emblem be;
It drinks heaven's dew as blithe as rose
That in the King's own garden grows;

154. Assuage. Soothe or abate.—159. Tweed and Spey. Throughout the whole country, the Tweed being the southern boundary and the Spey in the far north.—164. Boding. Foretelling.—170. Reave. To tear from or sweep away.—173. Harebell. A plant which bears blue, bell-shaped flowers; called also the bluebell of Scotland.

176. Lea. Meadow, pasture.—177. Emblem. Symbol or type,
And when I place it in my hair,  
Allan, a bard is bound to swear 
He ne'er saw coronet so fair."  
Then playfully the chaplet wild 
She wreathed in her dark locks, and smiled.

X.

Her smile, her speech, with winning sway,  
Wiled the old Harper's mood away.  
With such a look as hermits throw,  
When angels stoop to soothe their woe,  
He gazed, till fond regret and pride 
Thrilled to a tear, then thus replied:  
"Loveliest and best! thou little know'st  
The rank, the honors, thou hast lost!  
O, might I live to see thee grace,  
In Scotland's court, thy birthright place,  
To see my favorite's step advance  
The lightest in the courtly dance,  
The cause of every gallant's sigh,  
And leading star of every eye,  
And theme of every minstrel's art,  
The Lady of the Bleeding Heart!"

XI.

"Fair dreams are these," the maiden cried,—  
Light was her accent, yet she sighed,—

182. Coronet. The small crown or circlet worn by peers and peeresses.
186. Wiled. Beguiled. — 200. The Bleeding Heart. The shield of the Douglas family bore a red heart crowned, in remembrance of the charge given on his death-bed by Robert Bruce to James Douglas to bear his heart to Jerusalem.
"Yet is this mossy rock to me
Worth splendid chair and canopy;
Nor would my footstep spring more gay
In courtly dance than blithe strathspey,
Nor half so pleased mine ear incline
To royal minstrel's lay as thine.
And then for suitors proud and high,
To bend before my conquering eye,—
Thou, flattering bard! thyself wilt say,
That grim Sir Roderick owns its sway.
The Saxon scourge, Clan-Alpine's pride,
The terror of Loch Lomond's side,
Would, at my suit, thou know'st, delay
A Lennox foray — for a day." —

XII.

The ancient bard her glee repressed:
"Ill hast thou chosen theme for jest!
For who, through all this western wild,
Named Black Sir Roderick e'er, and smiled?
In Holy-Rood a knight he slew;
I saw, when back the dirk he drew,

206. **Strathspey.** A lively Scottish dance.
213. **Alpine.** An ancient king from whom several clans claimed descent.
214. **Loch Lomond.** One of the largest and most beautiful of Scottish lakes, near Loch Katrine.
216. **Lennox foray.** The raid of a body of armed men, for the sake of plunder, into the territory of the Lennox family, which lay around the south end of Loch Lomond.
220. **Black Sir Roderick.** See note, l. 408.
221. **Holy-Rood.** A castle in Edinburgh, the residence of the royal family of Scotland. — **In Holy-Rood a knight he slew.** This was by no means an uncommon occurrence in the Court of Scotland; nay, the presence of the sovereign himself scarcely restrained the fierce and inveterate feuds which were the perpetual source of bloodshed among the Scottish nobility. **Scott.**
Courtiers give place before the stride
Of the undaunted homicide;
And since, though outlawed, hath his hand
Full sternly kept his mountain land.
Who else dared give — ah! woe the day,
That I such hated truth should say! —
The Douglas, like a stricken deer,
Disowned by every noble peer,
Even the rude refuge we have here?
Alas, this wild marauding Chief
Alone might hazard our relief,
And now thy maiden charms expand,
Looks for his guerdon in thy hand;
Full soon may dispensation sought,
To back his suit, from Rome be brought.


230. Disowned by every noble peer. The exiled state of this powerful race is not exaggerated in this and subsequent passages. The hatred of James against the race of Douglas was so inveterate, that, numerous as their allies were, and disregarded as the regal authority had usually been in similar cases, their nearest friends, even in the most remote parts of Scotland, durst not entertain them, unless under the strictest and closest disguise. James Douglas, son of the banished Earl of Angus, afterwards well known by the title of Earl of Morton, lurked, during the exile of his family, in the north of Scotland, under the assumed name of James Ianes, otherwise James the Grieve (i.e., Reve or Bailiff). "And as he bore the name," says Godscroft, "so did he also execute the office of a grieve or overseer of the lands and rents, the corn and cattle of him with whom he lived." From the habits of frugality and observation which he acquired in his humble situation, the historian traces that intimate acquaintance with popular character, which enabled him to rise so high in the state, and that honorable economy by which he repaired and established the shattered estates of Angus and Morton. Scotr. — 232. Marauding. Plundering.

233. Hazard our relief. Run the risk of helping Ellen and her father.

236. Dispensation. The granting of a license by the Pope; in this case permission for Roderick to marry his cousin Ellen.
Then, though an exile on the hill,
Thy father, as the Douglas, still
Be held in reverence and fear;
And though to Roderick thou’rt so dear
That thou mightst guide with silken thread,
Slave of thy will, this chieftain’s dread,
Yet, O loved maid, thy mirth refrain!
Thy hand is on a lion’s mane.”

XIII.

“Minstrel,” the maid replied, and high
Her father’s soul glanced from her eye,
“My debts to Roderick’s house I know:
All that a mother could bestow
To Lady Margaret’s care I owe,
Since first an orphan in the wild
She sorrowed o’er her sister’s child;
To her brave chieftain son, from ire
Of Scotland’s king who shrouds my sire,
A deeper, holier debt is owed;
And, could I pay it with my blood,
Allan! Sir Roderick should command
My blood, my life,—but not my hand.
Rather will Ellen Douglas dwell
A votaress in Maronnan’s cell;
Rather through realms beyond the sea,
Seeking the world’s cold charity;

254. **Shrouds.** Protects.

260. **Votaress.** A woman devoted to any particular service or worship.

— **Maronnan.** The parish of Kilmaronock, at the eastern extremity of Loch Lomond, derives its name from a cell or chapel, dedicated to Saint Maronnan. **Scott.**
Where ne'er was spoke a Scottish word,
And ne'er the name of Douglas heard,
An outcast pilgrim will she rove,
Than wed the man she cannot love.

XIV.

"Thou shak'st, good friend, thy tresses gray, —
That pleading look, what can it say
But what I own? — I grant him brave,
But wild as Bracklinn's thundering wave;
And generous, — save vindictive mood
Or jealous transport chafe his blood:
I grant him true to friendly band,
As his claymore is to his hand;
But O! that very blade of steel
More mercy for a foe would feel:
I grant him liberal, to fling
Among his clan the wealth they bring,
When back by lake and glen they wind,
And in the Lowland leave behind,
Where once some pleasant hamlet stood,
A mass of ashes slaked with blood.
The hand that for my father fought
I honor, as his daughter ought;
But can I clasp it reeking red
From peasants slaughtered in their shed?
No! wildly while his virtues gleam,
They make his passions darker seem,

270. Bracklinn. This is a beautiful cascade made by a mountain stream called the Keltie, at a place called the Bridge of Bracklinn, about a mile from the village of Callander. Scott. — 274. Claymore. A large sword formerly used by the Highlanders. — 282. Slaked. Drenched.
And flash along his spirit high,
Like lightning o'er the midnight sky.
While yet a child,—and children know,
Instinctive taught, the friend and foe,—
I shuddered at his brow of gloom,
His shadowy plaid and sable plume;
A maiden grown, I ill could bear
His haughty mien and lordly air:
But, if thou join'st a suitor's claim,
In serious mood, to Roderick's name,
I thrill with anguish! or, if e'er
A Douglas knew the word, with fear.
To change such odious theme were best,—
What think'st thou of our stranger guest?"—

XV.

"What think I of him?—woe the while
That brought such wanderer to our isle!
Thy father's battle-brand, of yore
For Tine-man forged by fairy lore,
What time he leagued, no longer foes,
His Border spears with Hotspur's bows,
Did, self-uncabbarded, foreshow
The footstep of a secret foe.
If courtly spy hath harbored here,
What may we for the Douglas fear?

306. Tine-man. Archibald, the third Earl of Douglas, was so unfortunate in all his enterprises, that he acquired the epithet of Tine-man, because he tined, or lost, his followers in every battle which he fought.
Scott.—307. Leagued. United for mutual support.
308. His Border spears with Hotspur's bows. The reference is to the alliance of Douglas with his Scottish spearmen, and the English under Percy, or Hotspur, armed with the cross-bow.
What for this island, deemed of old
Clan-Alpine's last and surest hold?
If neither spy nor foe, I pray
What yet may jealous Roderick say? —
Nay, wave not thy disdainful head!
Bethink thee of the discord dread
That kindled when at Beltane game
Thou ledst the dance with Malcolm Græme;
Still, though thy sire the peace renewed,
Smoulders in Roderick's breast the feud:
Beware! — But hark! what sounds are these?
My dull ears catch no faltering breeze,
No weeping birch nor aspens wake,
Nor breath is dimpling in the lake;
Still is the canna's hoary beard,
Yet, by my minstrel faith, I heard —
And hark again! some pipe of war
Sends the bold pibroch from afar."

Far up the lengthened lake were spied
Four darkening specks upon the tide,
That, slow enlarging on the view,
Four manned and masted barges grew,
And, bearing downwards from Glengyle,
Steered full upon the lonely isle;
The point of Brianchoil they passed,
And, to the windward as they cast,

319. Beltane game. A May-day festival in honor of Beal, the Sun,
celebrated by kindling fires on the hill-tops and other ceremonies.
Against the sun they gave to shine
The bold Sir Roderick's banne red Pine.
Nearer and nearer as they bear,
Spears, pikes, and axes flash in air.
Now might you see the tartans brave,
And pl a ids and plumage dance and wave:
Now see the bonnets sink and rise,
As his tough oar the rower plies;
See, flashing at each sturdy stroke,
The wave ascending into smoke;
See the proud pipers on the bow,
And mark the gaudy streamers flow
From their loud chanters down, and sweep
The furrowed bosom of the deep,
As, rushing through the lake amain,
They plied the ancient Highland strain.

XVII.

Ever, as on they bore, more loud
And louder rung the pibroch proud.
At first the sounds, by distance tame,
Mellowed along the waters came,
And, lingering long by cape and bay,
Wailed every harsher note away,
Then bursting bolder on the ear,
The clan's shrill Gathering they could hear,
Those thrilling sounds that call the might
Of old Clan-Alpine to the fight.

340. Banne red Pine. The pine was the badge of Clan-Alpine.
345. Bonnets. The ordinary Scotch cap worn by men is called a bonnet
363. Thrilling sounds, etc. The connoisseurs in pipe-music affect to
The rapid notes, as when
The mustering hundreds shake the glen,
And hurrying at the signal dread,
The battered earth returns their tread.—
Then prelude light, of livelier tone,
Expressed their merry marching on,
Ere peal of closing battle rose,
With mingled outcry, shrieks, and blows;
And mimic din of stroke and ward,
As broadsword upon target jarred;
And groaning pause, ere yet again,
Condensed, the battle yelled amain:
The rapid charge, the rallying shout,
Retreat borne headlong into rout,
And bursts of triumph, to declare
Clan-Alpine’s conquest—all were there.
Nor ended thus the strain, but slow
Sunk in a moan prolonged and low,
And changed the conquering clarion swell
For wild lament o’er those that fell.

XVIII.
The war-pipes ceased, but lake and hill
Were busy with their echoes still;
And, when they slept, a vocal strain
Bade their hoarse chorus wake again,
While loud a hundred clansmen raise
Their voices in their Chieftain’s praise.
Each boatman, bending to his oar,
With measured sweep the burden bore,
In such wild cadence as the breeze
Makes through December’s leafless trees.
The chorus first could Allan know,
“Roderick Vich Alpine, ho! iro!”
And near, and nearer as they rowed,
Distinct the martial ditty flowed.

\section*{XIX.}
\textbf{Boat Song.}

Hail to the Chief who in triumph advances!
Honored and blest be the ever-green Pine!
Long may the tree, in his banner that glances,
Flourish, the shelter and grace of our line!
Heaven send it happy dew,
Earth lend it sap anew,
Gayly to bourgeon and broadly to grow,
While every Highland glen
Sends our shout back again,
“Roderick Vich Alpine dhu, ho! ieroe!”

392. \textbf{Burden.} Chorus. — 393. \textbf{Cadence.} A regular fall or modulation of sound. — 405. \textbf{Bourgeon} \textit{[Bur’jun]}. To bud or sprout.

408. \textbf{Roderigh Vich Alpine}. Besides his ordinary name and surname, which were chiefly used in the intercourse with the Lowlands, every Highland chief had an epithet expressive of his patriarchal dignity as head of the clan, and which was common to all his predecessors and successors, as Pharaoh to the kings of Egypt, or Arsaces to those of Parthia. This name was usually a patronymic, expressive of his descent from the founder of the family. Besides this title, which belonged to his office and dignity, the chieftain had usually another peculiar to himself, which distinguished him from the chieftains of the same race. This was sometimes derived from complexion, as \textit{dhu} or \textit{roy}; sometimes from size, as \textit{beg} or \textit{more}; at other times, from some peculiar exploit, or from some peculiarity of habit or appearance. The line of the text therefore signifies Black Roderick, the descendant of Alpine. \textit{Scott}. 
Ours is no sapling, chance-sown by the fountain,
    Blooming at Beltane, in winter to fade;
When the whirlwind has stripped every leaf on the mountain,
The more shall Clan Alpine exult in her shade.
    Moored in the rifted rock,
    Proof to the tempest’s shock,
Firmer he roots him the ruder it blow;
    Menteith and Breadalbane, then,
    Echo his praise again,
“Roderigh Vich Alpine dhu, ho! ieroe!”

Proudly our pibroch has thrilled in Glen Fruin,
    And Bannochar’s groans to our slogan replied;
Glen Luss and Ross-dhu, they are smoking in ruin,
    And the best of Loch Lomond lie dead on her side.
    Widow and Saxon maid
    Long shall lament our raid,
Think of Clan-Alpine with fear and with woe;
    Lennox and Leven-glen
    Shake when they hear again,
“Roderigh Vich Alpine dhu, ho! ieroe!”

413. Rifted. Split.

Valleys on the borders of Loch Lomond.
422. And the best of Loch Lomond, etc. The Lennox, as the district is called, which encircles the lower extremity of Loch Lomond, was peculiarly exposed to the incursions of the mountaineers, who inhabited the inaccessible fastnesses at the upper end of the lake, and the neighboring district of Loch Katrine. These were often marked by circumstances of great ferocity. Scott.
Row, vassals, row, for the pride of the Highlands!
Stretch to your oars for the ever-green Pine!
O that the rosebud that graces yon islands
Were wreathed in a garland around him to twine!
O that some seedling gem,
Worthy such noble stem,
Honored and blessed in their shadow might grow!
Loud should Clan-Alpine then
Ring from her deepmost glen,
"Roderigh Vich Alpine dhu, ho! ieroe!"

XXI.
With all her joyful female band
Had Lady Margaret sought the strand.
Loose on the breeze their tresses flew,
And high their snowy arms they threw,
As echoing back with shrill acclaim,
And chorus wild, the Chieftain’s name;
While, prompt to please, with mother’s art,
The darling passion of his heart,
The dame called Ellen to the strand,
To greet her kinsman ere he land:
"Come, loiterer, come! a Douglas thou,
And shun to wreathe a victor’s brow?"
Reluctantly and slow, the maid
The unwelcome summoning obeyed,
And when a distant bugle rung,
In the mid-path aside she sprung:—
"List, Allan-bane! From mainland cast
I hear my father’s signal blast.
Be ours," she cried, "the skiff to guide,
And waft him from the mountain-side."
Then, like a sunbeam, swift and bright,
She darted to her shallop light,
And, eagerly while Roderick scanned,
For her dear form, his mother's band,
The islet far behind her lay,
And she had landed in the bay.

XXII.

Some feelings are to mortals given
With less of earth in them than heaven;
And if there be a human tear
From passion's dross refined and clear,
A tear so limpid and so meek
It would not stain an angel's cheek,
'Tis that which pious fathers shed
Upon a dutiful daughter's head!
And as the Douglas to his breast
His darling Ellen closely pressed,
Such holy drops her tresses steeped,
Though 'twas an hero's eye that wepted.
Nor while on Ellen's faltering tongue
Her filial welcomes crowded hung,
Marked she that fear — affection's proof —
Still held a graceful youth aloof;
No! not till Douglas named his name,
Although the youth was Malcolm Graeme.

XXIII.

Allan, with wistful look the while,
Marked Roderick landing on the isle;

His master piteously he eyed,
Then gazed upon the Chieftain’s pride,
Then dashed with hasty hand away
From his dimmed eye the gathering spray;
And Douglas, as his hand he laid
On Malcolm’s shoulder, kindly said:
“Canst thou, young friend, no meaning spy
In my poor follower’s glistening eye?
I’ll tell thee: — he recalls the day
When in my praise he led the lay
O’er the arched gate of Bothwell proud,
While many a minstrel answered loud,
When Percy’s Norman pennon, won
In bloody field, before me shone,
And twice ten knights, the least a name
As mighty as yon Chief may claim,
Gracing my pomp, behind me came.
Yet trust me, Malcolm, not so proud
Was I of all that marshalled crowd,
Though the waned crescent owned my might,
And in my train trooped lord and knight,
Though Blantyre hymned her holiest lays,
And Bothwell’s bards flung back my praise,
As when this old man’s silent tear,
And this poor maid’s affection dear,
A welcome give more kind and true
Than aught my better fortunes knew.

497. Percy’s Norman pennon was captured by the Douglas.
501. Pomp. Parade.—504. Waned crescent. Sir Walter Scott of Buccleuch, whose shield bore a crescent moon, had endeavored to set the king free from the Douglases, but had been defeated by them. His failure is hence called the waning of the crescent. Yonge.
506. Blantyre. An old priory or abbey opposite Bothwell Castle.
Forgive, my friend, a father’s boast,—
O, it out-beggars all I lost!”

XXIV.
Delightful praise! — like summer rose,
That brighter in the dew-drop glows,
The bashful maiden’s cheek appeared,
For Douglas spoke, and Malcolm heard.
The flush of shame-faced joy to hide,
The hounds, the hawk, her cares divide;
The loved caresses of the maid
The dogs with crouch and whimper paid;
And, at her whistle, on her hand
The falcon took his favorite stand,
Closed his dark wing, relaxed his eye,
Nor, though unhooded, sought to fly.
And, trust, while in such guise she stood,
Like fabled Goddess of the wood,
That if a father’s partial thought
O’erweighed her worth and beauty aught,
Well might the lover’s judgment fail
To balance with a juster scale;
For with each secret glance he stole,
The fond enthusiast sent his soul.

XXV.
Of stature fair, and slender frame,
But firmly knit, was Malcolm Græme

525. Unhooded. It was very unusual for the falcon to rest quietly unhooded. He was kept with his head covered, and when the hood was removed he took flight at once in search of prey. — 526. Guise. Dress, garb.
527. Fabled Goddess. Goddess of the wood, Diana.
529. Aught. In any respect.
The belted plaid and tartan hose
Did ne’er more graceful limbs disclose;
His flaxen hair, of sunny hue,
Curled closely round his bonnet blue.
Trained to the chase, his eagle eye
The ptarmigan in snow could spy;
Each pass, by mountain, lake, and heath,
He knew, through Lennox and Menteith;
Vain was the bound of dark-brown doe
When Malcolm bent his sounding bow,
And scarce that doe, though winged with fear,
Outstripped in speed the mountaineer:
Right up Ben Lomond could he press,
And not a sob his toil confess.
His form accorded with a mind
Lively and ardent, frank and kind;
A blither heart, till Ellen came,
Did never love nor sorrow tame;
It danced as lightsome in his breast
As played the feather on his crest.
Yet friends, who nearest knew the youth,
His scorn of wrong, his zeal for truth,
And bards, who saw his features bold
When kindled by the tales of old,
Said, were that youth to manhood grown,
Not long should Roderick Dhu’s renown
Be foremost voiced by mountain fame,
But quail to that of Malcolm Graeme.

XXVI.

Now back they wend their watery way,
And, "O my sire!" did Ellen say,
"Why urge thy chase so far astray?
And why so late returned? And why"—
The rest was in her speaking eye.
"My child, the chase I follow far,
'Tis mimicry of noble war;
And with that gallant pastime reft
Were all of Douglas I have left.
I met young Malcolm as I strayed
Far eastward, in Glenfinlas' shade;
Nor strayed I safe, for all around
Hunters and horsemen scoured the ground.
This youth, though still a royal ward,
Risked life and land to be my guard,
And through the passes of the wood
Guided my steps, not unpursued;
And Roderick shall his welcome make,
Despite old spleen, for Douglas' sake.
Then must he seek Strath-Endrick glen,
Nor peril aught for me again."

XXVII.

Sir Roderick, who to meet them came,
Reddened at sight of Malcolm Græme,

570. Mimicry. Imitation.—571. Reft. Taken away.
577. Royal ward. Under the protection of the king.
582. Despite old spleen. Notwithstanding old quarrels.
Yet, not in action, word, or eye,  
Failed aught in hospitality.  
In talk and sport they whiled away  
The morning of that summer day;  
But at high noon a courier light  
Held secret parley with the knight,  
Whose moody aspect soon declared  
That evil were the news he heard.  
Deep thought seemed toiling in his head;  
Yet was the evening banquet made  
Ere he assembled round the flame  
His mother, Douglas, and the Græme,  
And Ellen too; then cast around  
His eyes, then fixed them on the ground,  
As studying phrase that might avail  
Best to convey unpleasant tale.  
Long with his dagger’s hilt he played,  
Then raised his haughty brow, and said: —

XXVIII.

"Short be my speech; — nor time affords,  
Nor my plain temper, glozing words.  
Kinsman and father, — if such name  
Douglas vouchsafe to Roderick’s claim;  
Mine honored mother; — Ellen, — why,  
My cousin, turn away thine eye? —  
And Græme, in whom I hope to know  
Full soon a noble friend or foe,  
When age shall give thee thy command,  
And leading in thy native land, —

606. Glorising. Fair, smooth, or flattering.
List all! — The King’s vindictive pride
Boasts to have tamed the Border-side,
Where chiefs, with hound and hawk who came
To share their monarch’s sylvan game,
Themselves in bloody toils were snared,
And when the banquet they prepared,
And wide their loyal portals flung,
O’er their own gateway struggling hung.
Loud cries their blood from Meggat’s mead,
From Yarrow braes and banks of Tweed,
Where the lone streams of Ettrick glide,
And from the silver Teviot’s side;
The dales, where martial clans did ride,
Are now one sheep-walk, waste and wide.
This tyrant of the Scottish throne,
So faithless and so ruthless known,
Now hither comes; his end the same,
The same pretext of sylvan game.
What grace for Highland Chiefs, judge ye
By fate of Border chivalry.
Yet more; amid Glenfinlas’ green,
Douglas, thy stately form was seen.
This by espial sure I know:
Your counsel in the straighth I show.”

616. Tamed the Border-side. James V. strove to put down the lawlessness of the Border chiefs, who were almost licensed robbers. He made a progress, dealing stern justice, and taking several by surprise, in especial one Johnnie Armstrong who came out to welcome him, but was seized and put to death. Yonge. — 621. Portals. Doors or gates.


630. Ruthless. Pitiless.

XXIX.

Ellen and Margaret fearfully
Sought comfort in each other’s eye,
Then turned their ghastly look, each one,
This to her sire, that to her son.
The hasty color went and came
In the bold cheek of Malcolm Græme,
But from his glance it well appeared
'Twas but for Ellen that he feared;
While, sorrowful, but undismayed,
The Douglas thus his counsel said:
"Brave Roderick, though the tempest roar,
It may but thunder and pass o’er;
Nor will I here remain an hour,
To draw the lightning on thy bower;
For well thou know’st, at this gray head
The royal bolt were fiercest sped.
For thee, who, at thy King’s command,
Canst aid him with a gallant band,
Submission, homage, humbled pride,
Shall turn the Monarch’s wrath aside.
Poor remnants of the Bleeding Heart,
Ellen and I will seek apart
The refuge of some forest cell,
There, like the hunted quarry, dwell,
Till on the mountain and the moor
The stern pursuit be passed and o’er.”—

XXX.

"No, by mine honor," Roderick said,
"So help me Heaven, and my good blade!
No, never! Blasted be yon Pine,
My father’s ancient crest and mine,  
If from its shade in danger part  
The lineage of the Bleeding Heart!  
Hear my blunt speech: grant me this maid  
To wife, thy counsel to mine aid;  
To Douglas, leagued with Roderick Dhu,  
Will friends and allies flock enow;  
Like cause of doubt, distrust, and grief,  
Will bind to us each Western Chief.  
When the loud pipes my bridal tell,  
The Links of Forth shall hear the knell,  
The guards shall start in Stirling’s porch;  
And when I light the nuptial torch,  
A thousand villages in flames  
Shall scare the slumbers of King James!—  
Nay, Ellen, blench not thus away,  
And, mother, cease these signs, I pray;  
I meant not all my heat might say.—  
Small need of inroad or of fight,  
When the sage Douglas may unite  
Each mountain clan in friendly band,  
To guard the passes of their land,  
Till the foiled King from pathless glen  
Shall bootless turn him home again.”


674. **Allies.** States or people united for a common object; associates; confederates. — **Enow.** Enough.

678. **Links of Forth.** Windings of the River Forth.

679. **Stirling’s porch.** Stirling Castle was long the residence of the Scottish kings.

680. **Nuptial torch.** Marriage torch. — 683. **Blench.** To draw back or shrink from.

690. **Foiled.** Defeated. — 691. **Bootless.** Unsuccessful.
XXXI.
There are who have, at midnight hour,
In slumber scaled a dizzy tower,
And, on the verge that beetled o'er
The ocean tide's incessant roar,
Dreamed calmly out their dangerous dream,
Till wakened by the morning beam;
When, dazzled by the eastern glow,
Such startler cast his glance below,
And saw unmeasured depth around,
And heard uninterrupted sound,
And thought the battled fence so frail,
It waved like cobweb in the gale;—
Amid his senses' giddy wheel,
Did he not desperate impulse feel,
Headlong to plunge himself below,
And meet the worst his fears foreshow?—
Thus Ellen, dizzy and astound,
As sudden ruin yawned around,
By crossing terrors wildly tossed,
Still for the Douglas fearing most,
Could scarce the desperate thought withstand,
To buy his safety with her hand.

XXXII.
Such purpose dread could Malcolm spy
In Ellen's quivering lip and eye,

And eager rose to speak, — but ere
His tongue could hurry forth his fear,
Had Douglas marked the hectic strife,
Where death seemed combating with life;
For to her cheek, in feverish flood,
One instant rushed the throbbing blood,
Then ebbing back, with sudden sway,
Left its domain as wan as clay.
"Roderick, enough! enough!" he cried,
"My daughter cannot be thy bride;
Not that the blush to wooer dear,
Nor paleness that of maiden fear.
It may not be, — forgive her, Chief,
Nor hazard aught for our relief.
Against his sovereign, Douglas ne'er
Will level a rebellious spear.
"Twas I that taught his youthful hand
To rein a steed and wield a brand;
I see him yet, the princely boy!
Not Ellen more my pride and joy;
I love him still, despite my wrongs
By hasty wrath and slanderous tongues.
O, seek the grace you well may find,
Without a cause to mine combined!"
Seemed, by the torch's gloomy light,
Like the ill Demon of the night,
Stooping his pinions' shadowy sway
Upon the nighted pilgrim's way:
But, unrequited Love! thy dart
Plunged deepest its envenomed smart,
And Roderick, with thine anguish stung,
At length the hand of Douglas wrung,
While eyes that mocked at tears before
With bitter drops were running o'er.
The death-pangs of long-cherished hope
Scarce in that ample breast had scope,
But, struggling with his spirit proud,
Convulsive heaved its checkered shroud,
While every sob — so mute were all —
Was heard distinctly through the hall.
The son's despair, the mother's look,
Ill might the gentle Ellen brook;
She rose, and to her side there came,
To aid her parting steps, the Graeme.

XXXIV.

Then Roderick from the Douglas broke —
As flashes flame through sable smoke,
Kindling its wreaths, long, dark, and low,
To one broad blaze of ruddy glow,
So the deep anguish of despair
Burst, in fierce jealousy, to air.
With stalwart grasp his hand he laid
On Malcolm's breast and belted plaid:

"Back, beardless boy!" he sternly said,
"Back, minion! holdst thou thus at naught
The lesson I so lately taught?
This roof, the Douglas, and that maid,
Thank thou for punishment delayed."
Eager as greyhound on his game,
Fiercely with Roderick grappled Græme.
"Perish my name, if aught afford
Its Chieftain safety save his sword!"
Thus as they strove their desperate hand
Griped to the dagger or the brand,
And death had been — but Douglas rose,
And thrust between the struggling foes
His giant strength: — "Chieftains, forego!
I hold the first who strikes my foe.—
Madmen, forbear your frantic jar!
What! is the Douglas fallen so far,
His daughter's hand is deemed the spoil
Of such dishonorable broil?"
Sullen and slowly they unclasp,
As struck with shame, their desperate grasp,
And each upon his rival glared,
With foot advanced and blade half bared.

XXXV.

Ere yet the brands aloft were flung,
Margaret on Roderick's mantle hung,
And Malcolm heard his Ellen's scream,
As faltered through terrific dream.
Then Roderick plunged in sheath his sword,
And veiled his wrath in scornful word:
"Rest safe till morning; pity 'twere
Such cheek should feel the midnight air!
Then mayst thou to James Stuart tell,
Roderick will keep the lake and fell,
Nor lackey with his freeborn clan
The pageant pomp of earthly man.
More would he of Clan-Alpine know,
Thou canst our strength and passes show.—
Malise, what ho!" — his henchman came:
"Give our safe-conduct to the Græme."
Young Malcolm answered, calm and bold:
"Fear nothing for thy favorite hold;
The spot an angel deigned to grace
Is blessed, though robbers haunt the place.
Thy churlish courtesy for those
Reserve, who fear to be thy foes.
As safe to me the mountain way
At midnight as in blaze of day,
Though with his boldest at his back
Even Roderick Dhu beset the track.—
Brave Douglas, — lovely Ellen, — nay,
Naught here of parting will I say.
Earth does not hold a lonesome glen
So secret but we meet again.—

802. **Such cheek should feel the midnight air.** Hardihood was in every respect so essential to the character of a Highlander, that the reproach of effeminacy was the most bitter which could be thrown upon him. **Scort.** — 804. **Fell.** A mountain. — 805. **Lackey.** To serve as footman or wait upon. — 806. **Pageant pomp.** Showy display.

809. **Henchman.** This officer is a sort of secretary, and is to be ready, upon all occasions, to venture his life in defence of his master; and at drinking-bouts he stands behind his seat, at his haunch, from which his title is derived, and watches the conversation, to see if any one offends his patron. **Scort.**
CANTO II.  
THE ISLAND.  

Chieftain! we too shall find an hour," — 
He said, and left the sylvan bower.

XXXVI.
Old Allan followed to the strand — 
Such was the Douglas's command — 
And anxious told, how, on the morn, 
The stern Sir Roderick deep had sworn, 
The Fiery Cross should circle o'er 
Dale, glen, and valley, down and moor. 
Much were the peril to the Græme 
From those who to the signal came; 
Far up the lake 'twere safest land, 
Himself would row him to the strand. 
He gave his counsel to the wind, 
While Malcolm did, unheeding, bind, 
Round dirk and pouch and broadsword rolled, 
His ample plaid in tightened fold, 
And stripped his limbs to such array 
As best might suit the watery way, —

XXXVII.
Then spoke abrupt: "Farewell to thee, 
Pattern of old fidelity!" 
The Minstrel's hand he kindly pressed, — 
"O, could I point a place of rest! 
My sovereign holds in ward my land, 
My uncle leads my vassal band;

832. Down. A barren tract of sand-hills blown up by the wind. — 
Moor. Waste land. 
847. My sovereign holds in ward my land. Because Malcolm was not of age.
To tame his foes, his friends to aid,
Poor Malcolm has but heart and blade.
Yet, if there be one faithful Græme
Who loves the chieftain of his name,
Not long shall honored Douglas dwell
Like hunted stag in mountain cell;
Nor, ere yon pride-swollen robber dare,—
I may not give the rest to air!
Tell Roderick Dhu I owed him naught,
Not the poor service of a boat,
To waft me to yon mountain-side."
Then plunged he in the flashing tide.
Bold o'er the flood his head he bore,
And stoutly steered him from the shore;
And Allan strained his anxious eye,
Far mid the lake his form to spy,
Darkening across each puny wave,
To which the moon her silver gave.
Fast as the cormorant could skim,
The swimmer plied each active limb;
Then landing in the moonlight dell,
Loud shouted of his weal to tell.
The minstrel heard the far halloo,
And joyful from the shore withdrew.

OUTLINE OF CANTO THIRD.

CANTO III. is almost entirely taken up with the gathering by means of the Fiery Cross. See Note, line 18. The cross is consecrated, and is at once entrusted to Malise, Roderick's henchman. He bears it eastward, and it is passed on from one hand to another, interrupting wedding and funeral alike, till the clan is gathered in Lanrick mead.

Roderick meanwhile has been reconnoitring, but finds no trace of the foes whom he had expected. The Douglas and his daughter have left the island, in order not to imperil their host, and have taken refuge in a cavern on the side of Benvenue, which the superstition of the age "debarred to vulgar tread," and thither Roderick comes, and, hovering over the treasure he has lost, hears Ellen's voice for the last time, and then hastens to join his men. — TAYLOR.
Canto Third.

THE GATHERING.

I.

Time rolls his ceaseless course. The race of yore,
Who danced our infancy upon their knee,
And told our marvelling boyhood legends store
Of their strange ventures happed by land or sea,
How they are blotted from the things that be!

How few, all weak and withered of their force,
Wait on the verge of dark eternity,
Like stranded wrecks, the tide returning hoarse,
To sweep them from our sight! Time rolls his ceaseless course.

Yet live there still who can remember well,
How, when a mountain chief his bugle blew,
Both field and forest, dingle, cliff, and dell,
And solitary heath, the signal knew;
And fast the faithful clan around him drew,
What time the warning note was keenly wound,
What time aloft their kindred banner flew,
While clamorous war-pipes yelled the gathering sound,
And while the Fiery Cross glanced, like a meteor, round.

3. Legends. Remarkable stories handed down from former times.
18. Fiery Cross. When a chieftain designed to summon his clan, upon any sudden or important emergency, he slew a goat, and making a cross of
II.

The Summer dawn's reflected hue
To purple changed Loch Katrine blue;
Mildly and soft the western breeze
Just kissed the lake, just stirred the trees,
And the pleased lake, like maiden coy,
Trembled but dimpled not for joy:
The mountain shadows on her breast
Were neither broken nor at rest;
In bright uncertainty they lie,
Like future joys to Fancy's eye.
The water-lily to the light
Her chalice reared of silver bright;
The doe awoke, and to the lawn,
Begemmed with dew-drops, led her fawn;
The gray mist left the mountain-side,
The torrent showed its glistening pride;

any light wood, seared its extremities in the fire, and extinguished them in
the blood of the animal. This was called the *Fiery Cross*, also *Cream
Tarigh*, or the *Cross of Shame*, because disobedience to what the symbol
implied inferred infamy. It was delivered to a swift and trusty messenger,
who ran full speed with it to the next hamlet, where he presented it to the
principal person, with a single word, implying the place of rendezvous.
He who received the symbol was bound to send it forward, with equal
dispatch, to the next village; and thus it passed with incredible celerity
through all the district which owed allegiance to the chief, and also among
his allies and neighbors, if the danger was common to them. At sight of
the Fiery Cross, every man, from sixteen years old to sixty, capable of
bearing arms, was obliged instantly to repair, in his best arms and accoutre-
ments, to the place of rendezvous. He who failed to appear, suffered the
extremities of fire and sword, which were emblematically denounced to the
disobedient by the bloody and burnt marks upon this warlike signal.
During the civil war of 1745-6, the Fiery Cross often made its circuit; and
upon one occasion it passed through the whole district of Breadalbane, a
tract of thirty-two miles, in three hours. Scott.

Invisible in flecked sky
The lark sent down her revelry;
The blackbird and the speckled thrush
Good-morrow gave from brake and bush;
In answer cooed the cushat dove
Her notes of peace and rest and love.

III.
No thought of peace, no thought of rest,
Assuaged the storm in Roderick’s breast.
With sheathed broadsword in his hand,
Abrupt he paced the islet strand,
And eyed the rising sun, and laid
His hand on his impatient blade.
Beneath a rock, his vassals’ care
Was prompt the ritual to prepare,
With deep and deathful meaning fraught;
For such Antiquity had taught
Was preface meet, ere yet abroad
The Cross of Fire should take its road.
The shrinking band stood oft aghast
At the impatient glance he cast;
Such glance the mountain eagle threw,
As, from the cliffs of Benvenue,
She spread her dark sails on the wind,
And, high in middle heaven reclined,
With her broad shadow on the lake,
Silenced the warblers of the brake.

50. Antiquity. Olden times.
A heap of withered boughs was piled,  
Of juniper and rowan wild,  
Mingled with shivers from the oak,  
Rent by the lightning's recent stroke.  
Brian the Hermit by it stood,  
Barefooted, in his frock and hood.  
His grizzled beard and matted hair  
Obscured a visage of despair;  
His naked arms and legs, seamed o'er,  
The scars of frantic penance bore.  
That monk, of savage form and face,  
The impending danger of his race  
Had drawn from deepest solitude,  
Far in Benharrow's bosom rude.  
Not his the mien of Christian priest,  
But Druid's, from the grave released,  
Whose hardened heart and eye might brook  
On human sacrifice to look;  
And much, 'twas said, of heathen lore  
Mixed in the charms he muttered o'er.

60. Penance. Suffering or labor self-inflicted or imposed by ecclesiastical authority as a punishment for faults.
71. That monk, etc. The state of religion in the middle ages afforded considerable facilities for those whose mode of life excluded them from regular worship, to secure, nevertheless, the ghostly assistance of confessors, perfectly willing to adapt the nature of their doctrine to the necessities and peculiar circumstances of their flock. Robin Hood, it is well known, had his celebrated domestic chaplain, Friar Tuck. Scott.
74. Benharrow. A mountain near Loch Lomond.
76. Druid. A priest of the Celtic inhabitants of Gaul and Britain. They worshipped in groves, and made human sacrifices.
The hallowed creed gave only worse
And deadlier emphasis of curse.
No peasant sought that Hermit’s prayer,
His cave the pilgrim shunned with care;
The eager huntsman knew his bound,
And in mid chase called off his hound;
Or if, in lonely glen or strath,
The desert-dweller met his path,
He prayed, and signed the cross between,
While terror took devotion’s mien.

V.

Of Brian’s birth strange tales were told.
His mother watched a midnight fold,
Built deep within a dreary glen,
Where scattered lay the bones of men
In some forgotten battle slain,
And bleached by drifting wind and rain.
It might have tamed a warrior’s heart
To view such mockery of his art!
The knot-grass fettered there the hand
Which once could burst an iron band;
Beneath the broad and ample bone,
That bucklered heart to fear unknown,
A feeble and a timorous guest,
The fieldfare framed her lowly nest;

81. **Hallowed creed.** The hallowed or Christian creed as distinguished from heathen lore or knowledge.
87. **Glen.** A narrow valley through which a small stream usually flows. — **Strath.** A valley of considerable size through which a river runs.
92. **Fold.** An inclosure for animals. — 99. **Knot-grass.** Twitch-grass, a kind of grass that is difficult to exterminate. — 102. **Bucklered.** Protected by a shield. — 104. **Fieldfare.** A kind of thrush.
There the slow blindworm left his slime
On the fleet limbs that mocked at time;
And there, too, lay the leader's skull,
Still wreathed with chaplet, flushed and full,
For heath-bell with her purple bloom
Supplied the bonnet and the plume.
All night, in this sad glen, the maid
Sat shrouded in her mantle's shade:
She said no shepherd sought her side,
No hunter's hand her snood untied,
Yet ne'er again to braid her hair
The virgin snood did Alice wear;
Gone was her maiden glee and sport,
Her maiden girdle all too short,
Nor sought she, from that fatal night,
Or holy church or blessed rite,
But locked her secret in her breast,
And died in travail, unconfessed.

VI.

Alone, among his young compeers,
Was Brian from his infant years;
A moody and heart-broken boy,
Estranged from sympathy and joy,
Bearing each taunt which careless tongue
On his mysterious lineage flung.
Whole nights he spent by moonlight pale,
To wood and stream his hap to wail,

116. Snood. The snood, or riband, with which a Scottish lass braided her hair, had an emblematical signification, and applied to her maiden character. It was exchanged for the curach, toy, or coif, when she passed, by marriage, into the matron state.  


Till, frantic, he as truth received
What of his birth the crowd believed,
And sought, in mist and meteor fire,
To meet and know his Phantom Sire!
In vain, to soothe his wayward fate,
The cloister oped her pitying gate;
In vain the learning of the age
Unclasped the sable-lettered page;
Even in its treasures he could find
Food for the fever of his mind.
Eager he read whatever tells
Of magic, cabala, and spells,
And every dark pursuit allied
To curious and presumptuous pride;
Till with fired brain and nerves o'erstrung,
And heart with mystic horrors wrung,
Desperate he sought Benharrow's den,
And hid him from the haunts of men.

VII.
The desert gave him visions wild,
Such as might suit the spectre's child.
Where with black cliffs the torrents toil,
He watched the wheeling eddies boil,
Till from their foam his dazzled eyes
Beheld the River Demon rise:

133. **Meteor fire.** Fiery appearance in the sky; a shooting star.
138. **Sable-lettered page.** Black lettered, so called because of the heavy-faced type used in early prints.
142. **Magic, cabala, spells.** Enchantment, mystery, charms.
154. **River Demon.** The River Demon, or River-horse, for 'tis that form which he commonly assumes, is the Kelpy of the Lowlands, an evil and malicious spirit, delighting to forebode and to witness calamity. **Scott.**
The mountain mist took form and limb
Of noontide hag or goblin grim;
The midnight wind came wild and dread,
Swelled with the voices of the dead;
Far on the future battle-heath
His eye beheld the ranks of death:
Thus the lone Seer, from mankind hurled,
Shaped forth a disembodied world.
One lingering sympathy of mind
Still bound him to the mortal kind;
The only parent he could claim
Of ancient Alpine's lineage came.
Late had he heard, in prophet's dream,
The fatal Ben-Shie's boding scream;
Sounds, too, had come in midnight blast
Of charging steeds, careering fast
Along Benharrow's shingly side,
Where mortal horseman ne'er might ride;
The thunderbolt had split the pine,—
All augured ill to Alpine's line.

162. Disembodied world. World of spirits.
168. Ben-Shie. Most great families in the Highlands were supposed to have a tutelar, or rather a domestic spirit, attached to them, who took an interest in their prosperity, and intimated by its wallings any approaching disaster. Ben-Shie implies a female fairy, whose lamentations were often supposed to precede the death of a chieftain of particular families. Scott.
169. Sounds, too, had come. A presage of the kind alluded to in the text, is still believed to announce death to the ancient Highland family of M'Lean of Loch Buie. The spirit of an ancestor slain in battle is heard to gallop along a stony bank, and then to ride thrice around the family residence, ringing his fairy bridle, and thus intimating the approaching calamity. How easily the eye as well as the ear may be deceived upon such occasions, is evident from the stories of armies in the air, and other spectral phenomena with which history abounds. Scott.
He girt his loins, and came to show
The signals of impending woe,
And now stood prompt to bless or ban,
As bade the Chieftain of his clan.

VIII.
'Twas all prepared; — and from the rock
A goat, the patriarch of the flock,
Before the kindling pile was laid,
And pierced by Roderick's ready blade.
Patient the sickening victim eyed
The life-blood ebb in crimson tide
Down his clogged beard and shaggy limb,
Till darkness glazed his eyeballs dim.
The grisly priest, with murmuring prayer,
A slender crosslet framed with care,
A cubit's length in measure due;
The shaft and limbs were rods of yew,
Whose parents in Inch-Cailliach wave
Their shadows o'er Clan-Alpine's grave,

176. **Impending.** Overhanging or threatening. — 177. **Bane.** To curse.
180. **Patriarch.** Father or leader. — 188. **Crosslet.** A little cross.
189. **Cubit.** A measure of length, being the distance from the elbow to the end of the middle finger.
190. **Yew.** An evergreen tree frequently found in British churchyards.
191. **Inch-Cailliach.** The Isle of Nuns, or of Old Women, is a most beautiful island at the lower extremity of Loch Lomond. The church belonging to the former nunnery was long used as the place of worship for the parish of Buchanan, but scarce any vestiges of it now remain. The burial ground continues to be used, and contains the family places of sepulture of several neighboring clans. The monuments of the lairds of MacGregor, and of other families, claiming a descent from the old Scottish King Alpine, are most remarkable. The Highlanders are as zealous of their rights of sepulture, as may be expected from a people, whose whole laws and government, if clanship can be called so, turned upon the single principle of family descent. **Scott.**
And, answering Lomond's breezes deep,
Soothe many a chieftain's endless sleep.
The Cross thus formed he held on high,
With wasted hand and haggard eye,
And strange and mingled feelings woke,
While his anathema he spoke:—

IX.

"Woe to the clansman who shall view
This symbol of sepulchral yew,
Forgetful that its branches grew
Where weep the heavens their holiest dew
On Alpine's dwelling low!
Deserter of his Chieftain's trust,
He ne'er shall mingle with their dust,
But, from his sires and kindred thrust,
Each clansman's execration just
Shall doom him wrath and woe."

He paused; — the word the vassals took,
With forward step and fiery look,
On high their naked brands they shook,
Their clattering targets wildly strook;

And first in murmur low,
Then, like the billow in his course,
That far to seaward finds his source,

And flings to shore his mustered force,

198. **Haggard.** Sunken by suffering. — 198. **Anathema.** A ban or curse pronounced by the church.

200. **Symbol.** Emblem or sign. — **Sepulchral.** Pertaining to the grave.

— **Yew.** Yew-trees were often planted in cemeteries.

207. **Exeaction.** Curse.

209. **Vassal.** One holding lands of a superior, and vowing fidelity and homage to him. Wb. — 212. **Strook.** Old form of struck.
Burst with loud roar their answer hoarse,
   "Woe to the traitor, woe!"
Ben-an's gray scalp the accents knew,
The joyous wolf from covert drew,
The exulting eagle screamed afar,—
They knew the voice of Alpine's war.

X.
The shout was hushed on lake and fell,
The Monk resumed his muttered spell:
Dismal and low its accents came,
The while he scathed the Cross with flame;
And the few words that reached the air,
Although the holiest name was there,
Had more of blasphemy than prayer.
But when he shook above the crowd
Its kindled points, he spoke aloud:—
"Woe to the wretch who fails to rear
At this dread sign the ready spear!
For, as the flames this symbol sear,
His home, the refuge of his fear,
   A kindred fate shall know;
Far o'er its roof the volumed flame
Clan-Alpine's vengeance shall proclaim,
While maids and matrons on his name
Shall call down wretchedness and shame,
   And infamy and woe."
Then rose the cry of females, shrill
As goshawk's whistle on the hill,

Denouncing misery and ill,
Mingled with childhood’s babbling trill
Of curses stammered slow;
Answering with imprecation dread,
“Sunk be his home in embers red!
And cursed be the meanest shed
That e’er shall hide the houseless head
We doom to want and woe!”
A sharp and shrieking echo gave,
Coir-Uriskin, thy goblin cave!
And the gray pass where birches wave
On Beala-nam-bo.

XI.
Then deeper paused the priest anew,
And hard his laboring breath he drew,
While, with set teeth and clenched hand,
And eyes that glowed like fiery brand,
He meditated curse more dread,
And deadlier, on the clansman’s head
Who, summoned to his chieftain’s aid,
The signal saw and disobeyed.
The crosslet’s points of sparkling wood
He quenched among the bubbling blood,

248. Embers. Lighted coals smouldering in ashes.
253. Coir-Uriskin, or Coir-nam-Uriskin ("the corry, or den, of the wild men"), a hollow cleft in the northern side of Benvenue, supposed to be haunted by fairies and evil spirits. It is surrounded by rocks and overshadowed by birch-trees, so as to give complete shelter. The Urisk is the equivalent of the Grecian Satyr, having a human form with goat’s feet. Taylor.
255. Beala-nam-bo, or the pass of cattle, is a most magnificent glade, overhung with aged birch-trees, a little higher up the mountain than the Coir-nam-Uriskin. Scott.
And, as again the sign he reared,
Hollow and hoarse his voice was heard:
"When flits this Cross from man to man,
Vich-Alpine's summons to his clan,
Burst be the ear that fails to heed!
Palsied the foot that shuns to speed!
May ravens tear the careless eyes,
Wolves make the coward heart their prize!
As sinks that blood-stream in the earth,
So may his heart's-blood drench his hearth!
As dies in hissing gore the spark,
Quench thou his light, Destruction dark!
And be the grace to him denied,
Bought by this sign to all beside!"
He ceased; no echo gave again
The murmur of the deep Amen.

XI.

Then Roderick with impatient look
From Brian's hand the symbol took:
"Speed, Malise, speed!" he said, and gave
The crosslet to his henchman brave.
"The muster-place be Lanrick mead—
Instant the time—speed, Malise, speed!"
Like heath-bird, when the hawks pursue,
A barge across Loch Katrine flew:
High stood the henchman on the prow;
So rapidly the barge-men row,
The bubbles, where they launched the boat,
Were all unbroken and afloat,

271. **Palsied.** The muscles having lost their power of answering to the will.—286. **Lanrick mead.** A meadow bordering on Loch Venachar.
Dancing in foam and ripple still,
When it had neared the mainland hill;
And from the silver beach's side
Still was the prow three fathom wide,
When lightly bounded to the land
The messenger of blood and brand.

XIII.

Speed, Malise, speed! the dun deer's hide
On fleeter foot was never tied.
Speed, Malise, speed! such cause of haste
Thine active sinews never braced.
Bend 'gainst the steepy hill thy breast,
Burst down like torrent from its crest;
With short and springing footstep pass
The trembling bog and false morass;
Across the brook like roebuck bound,
And thread the brake like questing hound;
The crag is high, the scaur is deep,
Yet shrink not from the desperate leap:
Parched are thy burning lips and brow,
Yet by the fountain pause not now;
Herald of battle, fate, and fear,
Stretch onward in thy fleet career!
The wounded hind thou track'st not now,
Pursuest not maid through Greenwood bough,
Nor pliest thou now thy flying pace
With rivals in the mountain race;

300. Dun deer's hide. The ancient buskin of the Highlander was made of the undressed deer's hide, with the hair outwards.
But danger, death, and warrior deed
Are in thy course — speed, Malise, speed!

XIV.

Fast as the fatal symbol flies,
In arms the huts and hamlets rise;
From winding glen, from upland brown,
They poured each hardy tenant down.
Nor slackened the messenger his pace;
He showed the sign, he named the place,
And, pressing forward like the wind,
Left clamor and surprise behind.
The fisherman forsook the strand,
The swarthy smith took dirk and brand;
With changed cheer, the mower blithe
Left in the half-cut swath his scythe;
The herds without a keeper strayed,
The plough was in mid-furrow stayed,
The falconer tossed his hawk away,
The hunter left the stag at bay;
Prompt at the signal of alarms,
Each son of Alpine rushed to arms;
So swept the tumult and affray
Along the margin of Achray.
Alas, thou lovely lake! that e'er
Thy banks should echo sounds of fear!
The rocks, the bosky thickets, sleep
So stilly on thy bosom deep,
The lark's blithe carol from the cloud
Seems for the scene too gayly loud.

CANTO III.

THE GATHERING.

XV.

Speed, Malise, speed! The lake is past,
Duncraggan's huts appear at last,
And peep, like moss-grown rocks, half seen,
Half hidden in the copse so green;
There mayst thou rest, thy labor done,
Their lord shall speed the signal on. —
As stoops the hawk upon his prey,
The henchman shot him down the way.
What woeful accents load the gale?
The funeral yell, the female wail!
A gallant hunter's sport is o'er,
A valiant warrior fights no more.
Who, in the battle or the chase,
At Roderick's side shall fill his place! —
Within the hall, where torch's ray
Supplies the excluded beams of day,
Lies Duncan on his lowly bier,
And o'er him streams his widow's tear.
His straupling son stands mournful by,
His youngest weeps, but knows not why;
The village maids and matrons round
The dismal coronach resound.

XVI.

Coronach.

He is gone on the mountain,
He is lost to the forest,

349. Duncraggan. A homestead near the Brig of Turk.
369. Coronach. The Coronach of the Highlanders was a wild expression of lamentation, poured forth by the mourners over the body of a departed friend. When the words of it were articulate, they expressed the praises of the deceased, and the loss the clan would sustain by his death. Scott.
Like a summer-dried fountain,
    When our need was the sorest.
The font, reappearing,
    From the rain-drops shall borrow,
But to us comes no cheering,
    To Duncan no morrow!

The hand of the reaper
    Takes the ears that are hoary,
But the voice of the weeper
    Wails manhood in glory.
The autumn winds rushing
    Waft the leaves that are searest,
But our flower was in flushing,
    When blighting was nearest.

Fleet foot on the correi,
    Sage counsel in cumber,
Red hand in the foray,
    How sound is thy slumber!
Like the dew on the mountain,
    Like the foam on the river,
Like the bubble on the fountain,
    Thou art gone, and forever!

XVII.

See Stumah, who, the bier beside,
His master’s corpse with wonder eyed,
Poor Stumah! whom his least halloo
Could send like lightning o’er the dew,

379. **Hoary.** White with age; ripe for the harvest. — 383. **Searest.** Dry-
est. — 384. **Fushing.** Full bloom. — 386. **Correi.** The hollow side of the
hill, where game usually lies. — 387. **Cumber.** Trouble, perplexity.
394. **Stumah.** Faithful. The name of a dog.
CANTO III.  

THE GATHERING.  

Bristles his crest, and points his ears,
As if some stranger step he hears.
'Tis not a mourner's muffled tread,
Who comes to sorrow o'er the dead,
But headlong haste or deadly fear
Urge the precipitate career.
All stand aghast: — unheeding all,
The henchman bursts into the hall;
Before the dead man's bier he stood,
Held forth the Cross besmeared with blood;
"The muster-place is Lanrick mead;
Speed forth the signal! clansmen, speed!"

XVIII.  

Angus, the heir of Duncan's line,
Sprung forth and seized the fatal sign.
In haste the stripling to his side
His father's dirk and broadsword tied;
But when he saw his mother's eye
Watch him in speechless agony,
Back to her opened arms he flew,
Pressed on her lips a fond adieu,—
"Alas!" she sobbed, — "and yet be gone,
And speed thee forth, like Duncan's son!"
One look he cast upon the bier,
Dashed from his eye the gathering tear,
Breathed deep to clear his laboring breast.
And tossed aloft his bonnet crest,
Then, like the high-bred colt when, freed,
First he essays his fire and speed,
He vanished, and o'er moor and moss
Sped forward with the Fiery Cross.
Suspended was the widow’s tear
While yet his footsteps she could hear;
And when she marked the henchman’s eye
Wet with unwonted sympathy,
“Kinsman,” she said, “his race is run
That should have sped thine errand on;
The oak has fallen,—the sapling bough
Is all Duncraggan’s shelter now.
Yet trust I well, his duty done,
The orphan’s God will guard my son.—
And you, in many a danger true,
At Duncan’s best your blades that drew,
To arms, and guard that orphan’s head!
Let babes and women wail the dead.”
Then weapon-clang and martial call
Resounded through the funeral hall,
While from the walls the attendant band
Snatched sword and targe with hurried hand;
And short and flitting energy
Glanced from the mourner’s sunken eye,
As if the sounds to warrior dear
Might rouse her Duncan from his bier.
But faded soon that borrowed force;
Grief claimed his right, and tears their course.

XIX.

Benledi saw the Cross of Fire,
It glanced like lightning up Strath-Ire.

453. Strath-Ire. The first stage of the Fiery Cross is to Duncraggan, a
place near the Brigg of Turk, where a short stream divides Loch Achray
from Loch Vennachar. From thence, it passes towards Callender, and
then, turning to the left up the pass of Leny, is consigned to Norman at
O'er dale and hill the summons flew,
Nor rest nor pause young Angus knew;
The tear that gathered in his eye
He left the mountain-breeze to dry;
Until, where Teith's young waters roll
Betwixt him and a wooded knoll
That graced the sable strath with green,
The chapel of Saint Bride was seen.
Swoln was the stream, remote the bridge,
But Angus paused not on the edge;
Though the dark waves danced dizzily,
Though reeled his sympathetic eye,
He dashed amid the torrent's roar:
His right hand high the crosslet bore,
His left the pole-axe grasped, to guide
And stay his footing in the tide.
He stumbled twice,—the foam splashed high,
With hoarser swell the stream raced by;
And had he fallen,—forever there,
Farewell Duncraggan's orphan heir!
But still, as if in parting life,
Firmer he grasped the Cross of strife,
Until the opposing bank he gained,
And up the chapel pathway strained.

XX.
A blithesome rout that morning-tide
Had sought the chapel of Saint Bride.

the chapel of Saint Bride, which stood on a small and romantic knoll in the middle of the valley, called Strath-Tre. Tombea and Armandave, or Ardmandave, are names of places in the vicinity. The alarm is then supposed to pass along the lake of Lubnaig, and through the various glens in the district of Balquiddar, including the neighboring tracts of Glenfinlas and Strath-Gartney. Scott.—468. Pole-axe. A kind of long-handed hatchet.
Her troth Tombea's Mary gave
To Norman, heir of Armandave,
And, issuing from the Gothic arch,
The bridal now resumed their march.
In rude but glad procession came
Bonneted sire and coif-clad dame;
And plaided youth, with jest and jeer,
Which snooded maiden would not hear;
And children, that, unwitting why,
Lent the gay shout their shrilly cry;
And minstrels, that in measures vied
Before the young and bonny bride,
Whose downcast eye and cheek disclose
The tear and blush of morning rose.
With virgin step and bashful hand
She held the kerchief's snowy band.
The gallant bridegroom by her side
Beheld his prize with victor's pride,
And the glad mother in her ear
Was closely whispering word of cheer.

XXI.

Who meets them at the churchyard gate?
The messenger of fear and fate!
Haste in his hurried accent lies,
And grief is swimming in his eyes.
All dripping from the recent flood,
Panting and travel-soiled he stood,
The fatal sign of fire and sword
Held forth, and spoke the appointed word:

"The muster-place is Lanrick mead;  
Speed forth the signal! Norman, speed!"  
And must he change so soon the hand  
Just linked to his by holy band,  
For the fell Cross of blood and brand?  
And must the day so blithe that rose,  
And promised rapture in the close,  
Before its setting hour, divide  
The bridegroom from the plighted bride?  
O fatal doom! — it must! it must!  
Clan-Alpine's cause, her Chieftain's trust,  
Her summons dread, brook no delay;  
Stretch to the race, — away! away!

**XXII.**

Yet slow he laid his plaid aside,  
And lingering eyed his lovely bride,  
Until he saw the starting tear  
Speak woe he might not stop to cheer;  
Then, trusting not a second look,  
In haste he sped him up the brook,  
Nor backward glanced till on the heath  
Where Lubnaig's lake supplies the Teith. —  
What in the racer's bosom stirred?  
The sickening pang of hope deferred,  
And memory with a torturing train  
Of all his morning visions vain.  
Mingled with love's impatience, came  
The manly thirst for martial fame;  
The stormy joy of mountaineers  
Ere yet they rush upon the spears;

528. **Lubnaig.** "The lake of small bends," lying east of Ben Ledi.
And zeal for Clan and Chieftain burning,
And hope, from well-fought field returning,
With war's red honors on his crest,
To clasp his Mary to his breast.
Stung by such thoughts, o'er bank and brae,
Like fire from flint he glanced away,
While high resolve and feeling strong
Burst into voluntary song.

XXIII.

Song.

The heath this night must be my bed,
The bracken curtain for my head,
My lullaby the warder's tread,
Far, far, from love and thee, Mary;
To-morrow eve, more stilly laid,
My couch may be my bloody plaid,
My vesper song thy wail, sweet maid!
It will not waken me, Mary!

I may not, dare not, fancy now
The grief that clouds thy lovely brow,
I dare not think upon thy vow,
And all it promised me, Mary.
No fond regret must Norman know;
When bursts Clan-Alpine on the foe,
His heart must be like bended bow,
His foot like arrow free, Mary.

544. Voluntary. Of his own free will.
A time will come with feeling fraught,
For, if I fall in battle fought,
Thy hapless lover’s dying thought
Shall be a thought on thee, Mary.
And if returned from conquered foes,
How blithely will the evening close,
How sweet the linnet sing repose,
To my young bride and me, Mary!

**XXIV.**

Not faster o’er thy heathery braes,
Balquidder, speeds the midnight blaze,
Rushing in conflagration strong
Thy deep ravines and dells along,
Wrapping thy cliffs in purple glow,
And reddening the dark lakes below;
Nor faster speeds it, nor so far,
As o’er thy heaths the voice of war.
The signal roused to martial coil
The sullen margin of Loch Voil,
Waked still Loch Doine, and to the source
Alarmed, Balvaig, thy swampy course;
Thence southward turned its rapid road
Adown Strath-Gartney’s valley broad,

570. **Midnight blaze.** The heath on the Scottish moorlands is often set fire to, that the sheep may have the advantage of the tough old heather plants. This custom (execrated by sportsmen) produces occasionally the most beautiful nocturnal appearances, similar almost to the discharge of a volcano. Scott.

572. **Ravine.** A deep and narrow hollow worn by a stream of water; a gorge.

577. **Coil.** Tumult, confusion.

580. **Balvaig.** River flowing from Lochs Voil and Doine into Lubnaig.

582. **Strath-Gartney.** Valley bordering on Loch Katrine.
Till rose in arms each man might claim
A portion of Clan-Alpine’s name,
From the gray sire, whose trembling hand
Could hardly buckle on his brand,
To the raw boy, whose shaft and bow
Were yet scarce terror to the crow.
Each valley, each sequestered glen,
Mustered its little horde of men,
That met as torrents from the height
In Highland dales their streams unite,
Still gathering, as they pour along,
A voice more loud, a tide more strong,
Till at the rendezvous they stood
By hundreds prompt for blows and blood,
Each trained to arms since life began,
Owning no tie but to his clan,
No oath but by his chieftain’s hand,
No law but Roderick Dhu’s command.

XXV.

That summer morn had Roderick Dhu
Surveyed the skirts of Benvenue,
And sent his scouts o’er hill and heath,
To view the frontiers of Menteith.

589. Sequestered. Set apart or retired.
590. Horde. Clan or tribe.
595. Rendezvous. An appointed place for meeting, especially for
troops or ships of war.
599. By his chieftain’s hand. The deep and implicit respect paid by
the Highland clansmen to their chief, rendered this both a common and a
solemn oath. In other respects, they were like most savage nations,
capricious in their ideas concerning the obligatory power of oaths. Scott.
All backward came with news of truce;
Still lay each martial Græme and Bruce,
In Rednock courts no horsemen wait,
No banner waved on Cardross gate,
On Duchray's towers no beacon shone,
Nor scared the herons from Loch Con;
All seemed at peace.—Now wot ye why
The Chieftain with such anxious eye,
Ere to the muster he repair,
This western frontier scanned with care?—
In Benvenue's most darksome cleft,
A fair though cruel pledge was left;
For Douglas, to his promise true,
That morning from the isle withdrew,
And in a deep sequestered dell
Had sought a low and lonely cell.
By many a bard in Celtic tongue
Has Coir-man-Uriskin been sung;
A softer name the Saxons gave,
And called the grot the Goblin Cave.

XXVI.

It was a wild and strange retreat,
As e'er was trod by outlaw's feet.
The dell, upon the mountain's crest,
Yawned like a gash on warrior's breast;

606. Græme. Canto II., line 109.—Bruce. A family illustrious in
610. Loch Con. "Lake of the dogs," lying between Benvenue and
Ben Lomond.
Its trench had stayed full many a rock,
Hurled by primeval earthquake shock
From Benvenue's gray summit wild,
And here, in random ruin piled,
They frowned incumbent o'er the spot,
And formed the rugged sylvan grot.
The oak and birch with mingled shade
At noontide there a twilight made,
Unless when short and sudden shone'
Some straggling beam on cliff or stone,
With such a glimpse as prophet's eye
Gains on thy depth, Futurity.
No murmur waked the solemn still,
Save tinkling of a fountain rill;
But when the wind chafed with the lake,
A sullen sound would upward break,
With dashing hollow voice, that spoke
The incessant war of wave and rock.
Suspended cliffs with hideous sway
Seemed nodding o'er the cavern gray.
From such a den the wolf had sprung,
In such the wild-cat leaves her young;
Yet Douglas and his daughter fair
Sought for a space their safety there.
Gray Superstition's whisper dread
Debarred the spot to vulgar tread;
For there, she said, did fays resort,
And satyrs hold their sylvan court,
By moonlight tread their mystic maze,
And blast the rash beholder's gaze.

XXVII.
Now eve, with western shadows long,
Floating on Katrine bright and strong,
When Roderick with a chosen few
Repassed the heights of Benvenue.
Above the Goblin Cave they go,
Through the wild pass of Beal-nam-bo;
The prompt retainers speed before,
To launch the shallop from the shore,
For 'cross Loch Katrine lies his way
To view the passes of Achray,
And place his clansmen in array.
Yet lags the Chief in musing mind,
Unwonted sight, his men behind.
A single page, to bear his sword,
Alone attended on his lord;
The rest their way through thickets break,
And soon await him by the lake.
It was a fair and gallant sight,
To view them from the neighboring height,
By the low-levelled sunbeam's light!
For strength and stature, from the clan
Each warrior was a chosen man,
As even afar might well be seen,
By their proud step and martial mien.
Their feathers dance, their tartans float,
Their targets gleam, as by the boat

A wild and warlike group they stand,
That well became such mountain-strand.

XXVIII.

Their Chief with step reluctant still
Was lingering on the craggy hill,
Hard by where turned apart the road
To Douglas's obscure abode.
It was but with that dawning morn
That Roderick Dhu had proudly sworn
To drown his love in war's wild roar,
Nor think of Ellen Douglas more;
But he who stems a stream with sand,
And fetters flame with flaxen band,
Has yet a harder task to prove,—
By firm resolve to conquer love!
Eve finds the Chief, like restless ghost,
Still hovering near his treasure lost;
For though his haughty heart deny
A parting meeting to his eye,
Still fondly strains his anxious ear
The accents of her voice to hear,
And inly did he curse the breeze
That waked to sound the rustling trees.
But hark! what mingles in the strain?
It is the harp of Allan-bane,
That wakes its measure slow and high,
Attuned to sacred minstrelsy.
What melting voice attends the strings?
'Tis Ellen, or an angel, sings.
CANTO III.  

THE GATHERING.  

XXIX.

HYMN TO THE VIRGIN.

Ave Maria! maiden mild! 
Listen to a maiden's prayer!  
Thou canst hear though from the wild, 
Thou canst save amidst despair.
Safe may we sleep beneath thy care, 
Though banished, outcast, and reviled — 
Maiden! hear a maiden's prayer; 
Mother, hear a suppliant child!  

Ave Maria!

Ave Maria! undefiled! 
The flinty couch we now must share 
Shall seem with down of eider piled, 
If thy protection hover there.
The murky cavern's heavy air 
Shall breathe of balm if thou hast smiled; 
Then, Maiden! hear a maiden's prayer, 
Mother, list a suppliant child!  

Ave Maria!

Ave Maria! stainless styled! 
Foul demons of the earth and air, 
From this their wonted haunt exiled, 
Shall flee before thy presence fair. 
We bow us to our lot of care, 
Beneath thy guidance reconciled: 
Hear for a maid a maiden's prayer,  
And for a father hear a child!  

Ave Maria!

713. Ave Maria! Hail, Mary! The beginning of the Roman Catholic prayer to the Virgin Mary.
XXX.

Died on the harp the closing hymn,—
Unmoved in attitude and limb,
As listening still, Clan-Alpine's lord
Stood leaning on his heavy sword,
Until the page with humble sign
Twice pointed to the sun's decline.
Then while his plaid he round him cast,
"It is the last time — 'tis the last,"
He muttered thrice, — "the last time e'er
That angel-voice shall Roderick hear!"
It was a goading thought, — his stride
Hied hastier down the mountain-side;
Sullen he flung him in the boat,
An instant 'cross the lake it shot.
They landed in that silvery bay,
And eastward held their hasty way,
Till, with the latest beams of light,
The band arrived on Lanrick height,
Where mustered in the vale below
Clan-Alpine's men in martial show.

XXXI.

A various scene the clansmen made:
Some sat, some stood, some slowly strayed;
But most, with mantles folded round,
Were couched to rest upon the ground,
Scarce to be known by curious eye
From the deep heather where they lie,
So well was matched the tartan screen
With heath-bell dark and brackens green;
Unless where, here and there, a blade
Or lance’s point a glimmer made,
Like glow-worm twinkling through the shade.
But when, advancing through the gloom,
They saw the Chieftain’s eagle plume,
Their shout of welcome, shrill and wide,
Shook the steep mountain’s steady side.
Thrice it arose, and lake and fell
Three times returned the martial yell;
It died upon Bochastle’s plain,
And Silence claimed her evening reign.
OUTLINE OF CANTO FOURTH.

The clans are gathered, the Lowlanders are at Doune waiting the command to advance, and Brian tries by a weird augury to discover what shall be the issue of the fight. He takes care to magnify his own courage and merit in so doing, and declares, as the result of his spells, that the victory will rest with those that draw the first blood. Meantime the Douglas has left his daughter in Allan's charge, and himself is gone on some secret errand, which he does not confide to them. Ellen's fears are aroused. She feels as by instinct that her father has gone to purchase, by surrender of himself, the release of Malcolm Graeme, whom they imagine to be captive. In vain the minstrel seeks to cheer her grief. She gives little heed to his song. It is hardly ended when Fitz-James again appears, bent now on carrying her off with him to Stirling, away from noise of battle. She has recognized his noble nature, and feels that the safest way is to trust him with her secret. He offers to stay for her protection; but Ellen knows better than he the danger that this would involve to them both, and declines the offer. So he leaves with her a ring, a pledge, as he says, which he received from the king, and which will assure her of the king's protection. He returns to his guide, who is really a clansman of Roderick, set to draw him on, in the belief that he is a spy. They set off eastward, when suddenly the guide gives a loud whoop. Fitz-James, to whom Allan Bane has already suggested doubts of the man's truth, fancies that this is a signal cry; but Murdoch manages for the time to lull his suspicions. Presently they come upon a wild-looking woman, taken captive, as Murdoch relates, in one of Clan-Alpine's raids in the Lowlands. It had been her wedding-morn, and her husband had fallen by Roderick's sword. Her reason had given way; but one passion, that of revenge, is awake still. She recognizes the knight's Lowland dress, and
OUTLINE OF CANTO FOURTH.

warns him in a wild song of his danger. He turns upon his guide, and bids him disclose his treachery. But the man takes to his heels, first discharging a Parthian shot, which grazes the knight's helmet, and fatally wounds poor Blanche. Murdoch's speed is vain; he is overtaken and slain before he can reach his friends; and Fitz-James, soothing the mad woman in her last hour, swears to avenge her wrong on Roderick. Left without guide in the midst of foes, he deems it prudent not to advance till nightfall. Then he pursues his way as best he can; but soon comes full upon one of the enemy's watch-fires. He boldly avows himself Roderick's foe; but the stranger, assured that he is not a spy, refuses to take advantage of his weariness, and gives him shelter for the night, promising to guide him on the morrow to the border of the king's domain.—TAYLOR.
Canto Fourth.

THE PROPHECY.

I.

"The rose is fairest when 'tis budding new,
And hope is brightest when it dawns from fears;
The rose is sweetest washed with morning dew,
And love is loveliest when embalmed in tears.
O wilding rose, whom fancy thus endears,
I bid your blossoms in my bonnet wave,
Emblem of hope and love through future years!"

Thus spoke young Norman, heir of Armandave,
What time the sun arose on Vennachar's broad wave.

II.

Such fond conceit, half said, half sung,
Love prompted to the bridegroom's tongue.
All while he stripped the wild-rose spray,
His axe and bow beside him lay,
For on a pass 'twixt lake and wood
A wakeful sentinel he stood.

Hark!—on the rock a footprint rung,
And instant to his arms he sprung.
"Stand, or thou diest!—What, Malise?—soon
Art thou returned from Braes of Doune.

19. Braes of Doune. Hill slopes on the north side of the Teith,
By thy keen step and glance I know,
Thou bring'st us tidings of the foe.”—
For while the Fiery Cross hied on,
On distant scout had Malise gone.—
“Where sleeps the Chief?” the henchman said.
“Apart, in yonder misty glade;
To his lone couch I’ll be your guide.”—
Then called a slumberer by his side,
And stirred him with his slackened bow,—
“Up, up, Glentarkin! rouse thee, ho!
We seek the Chieftain; on the track
Keep eagle watch till I come back.”

III.

Together up the pass they sped:
“What of the foeman?” Norman said.—
“Varying reports from near and far;
This certain,—that a band of war
Has for two days been ready bouned,
At prompt command to march from Doune;
King James the while, with princely powers,
Holds revelry in Stirling towers.
Soon will this dark and gathering cloud
Speak on our glens in thunder loud.
Inured to bide such bitter bout,
The warrior’s plaid may bear it out;
But, Norman, how wilt thou provide
A shelter for thy bonny bride?”—
“What! know ye not that Roderick’s care

To the lone isle hath caused repair
Each maid and matron of the clan,
And every child and aged man
Unfit for arms; and given his charge,
Nor skiff, nor shallop, boat nor barge,
Upon these lakes shall float at large,
But all beside the islet moor,
That such dear pledge may rest secure?" —

IV.

" 'Tis well advised, — the Chieftain's plan
Bespeaks the father of his clan.
But wherefore sleeps Sir Roderick Dhu
Apart from all his followers true?"
"It is because last evening-tide
Brian an augury hath tried,
Of that dread kind which must not be
Unless in dread extremity,
The Taghaim called; by which, afar,
Our sires foresaw the events of war.
Duncraggan's milk-white bull they slew," —

60. **Augury.** The foretelling of events; an omen.

63. **Taghaim.** The Highlanders, like all rude people, had various superstitious modes of inquiring into futurity. One of the most noted was the *Taghaim* mentioned in the text. A person was wrapped up in the skin of a newly-slain bullock, and deposited beside a waterfall, or at the bottom of a precipice, or in some other strange, wild, and unusual situation, where the scenery around him suggested nothing but objects of horror. In this situation he revolved in his mind the question proposed, and whatever was impressed upon him by his exalted imagination passed for the inspiration of the disembodied spirits who haunt the desolate recesses. — Scott.
MALISE.

"Ah! well the gallant brute I knew!
The choicest of the prey we had
When swept our merrymen Gallangad.
His hide was snow, his horns were dark,
His red eye glowed like fiery spark;
So fierce, so tameless, and so fleet,
Sore did he cumber our retreat,
And kept our stoutest kerns in awe,
Even at the pass of Beal 'maha.
But steep and flinty was the road,
And sharp the hurrying pikeman's goad,
And when we came to Dennan's Row
A child might scathless stroke his brow."

V.

NORMAN.

"That bull was slain; his reeking hide
They stretched the cataract beside,
Whose waters their wild tumult toss
Adown the black and craggy boss
Of that huge cliff whose ample verge
Tradition calls the Hero's Targe.
Couched on a shelf beneath its brink,
Close where the thundering torrents sink,

73. Kerns. Foot-soldiers of the lowest rank.
77. Dennan's Row. A starting-place for ascending Ben Lomond.
78. Scathless. Without harm.
82. Boss. A protuberance.
84. Hero's Targe. The name of a rock in the Forest of Glenfinlas by which a noisy cataract runs.
Rocking beneath their headlong sway,
And drizzled by the ceaseless spray,
'Midst groan of rock and roar of stream,
The wizard waits prophetic dream.
Nor distant rests the Chief; — but hush!
See, gliding slow through mist and bush,
The hermit gains yon rock, and stands
To gaze upon our slumbering bands.
Seems he not, Malise, like a ghost,
That hovers o'er a slaughtered host?
Or raven on the blasted oak,
That, watching while the deer is broke,
His morsel claims with sullen croak?”

MALISE.

“Peace! peace! to other than to me
Thy words were evil augury;
But still I hold Sir Roderick’s blade,
Clan-Alpine’s omen and her aid,
Not aught that, gleaned from heaven or hell,
Yon fiend-begotten Monk can tell.
The Chieftain joins him, see — and now
Together they descend the brow.”

VI.

And, as they came, with Alpine’s Lord
The Hermit Monk held solemn word:

98. Broke. Quartered. Everything belonging to the chase was matter of solemnity among our ancestors; but nothing was more so than the mode of cutting up, or, as it was technically called, breaking the slaughtered stag. The forester had his allotted portion; the hounds had a certain allowance; and, to make the division as general as possible, the very birds had their share also. — Scott.

103. Omen. Sign of good or evil; foreboding.
CANTO IV. 
THE PROPHECY. 

"Roderick! it is a fearful strife,
For man endowed with mortal life,
Whose shroud of sentient clay can still
Feel feverish pang and fainting chill,
Whose eye can stare in stony trance,
Whose hair can rouse like warrior's lance,—
'Tis hard for such to view, unfurled,
The curtain of the future world.
Yet, witness every quaking limb,
My sunken pulse, mine eyeballs dim,
My soul with harrowing anguish torn,
This for my Chieftain have I borne!—
The shapes that sought my fearful couch
A human tongue may ne'er avouch;
No mortal man—save he, who, bred
Between the living and the dead,
Is gifted beyond nature's law—
Had e'er survived to say he saw.
At length the fateful answer came
In characters of living flame!
Not spoke in word, nor blazed in scroll,
But borne and branded on my soul:

\textit{Which spills the foremost foeman's life,}
\textit{That party conquers in the strife.}"

112. \textit{Sentient.} Having sensation or feeling; conscious.
114. \textit{Trance.} A state of insensibility to the things of this world.
123. \textit{Avouch.} Affirm.
130. \textit{Blazed.} Displayed; published.—\textit{Scroll.} A roll of paper or parchment usually containing some writing.
133. \textit{That party conquers in the strife.} Though this be in the text described as a response of the Tagahirm, or Oracle of the Hide, it was of itself an augury frequently attended to. The fate of the battle was often anticipated in the imagination of the combatants, by observing which party first shed blood. It is said that the Highlanders under
VII.

"Thanks, Brian, for thy zeal and care! Good is thine augury, and fair.
Clan-Alpine ne'er in battle stood
But first our broadswords tasted blood.
A surer victim still I know,
Self-offered to the auspicious blow:
A spy has sought my land this morn,—
No eve shall witness his return!
My followers guard each pass's mouth,
To east, to westward, and to south;
Red Murdoch, bribed to be his guide,
Has charge to lead his steps aside,
Till in deep path or dingle brown
He light on those shall bring him down.—
But see, who comes his news to show!
Malise! what tidings of the foe?"

VIII.

"At Doune, o'er many a spear and glaive
Two Barons proud their banners wave.
I saw the Moray's silver star,
And marked the sable pale of Mar."

Montrose were so deeply imbued with this notion, that, on the morning of the battle of Tippermoor, they murdered a defenceless herdsman, whom they found in the fields, merely to secure an advantage of so much consequence to their party. — Scorr.

139. Auspicious. Of good omen; fortunate.
152-53. Moray's silver star ... sable pale of Mar. The Earls of Moray and Mar were supporters of the King. The shield or banner of the one bore a star, the other a black band going perpendicularly down the centre of the shield, called a pale.
CANTO IV.  

THE PROPHECY.  

"By Alpine's soul, high tidings those!  
I love to hear of worthy foes.  
When move they on?" "To-morrow's noon  
Will see them here for battle boun'e."

Then shall it see a meeting stern!  
But, for the place, say,—couldst thou learn  
Nought of the friendly clans of Earn?  
Strengthened by them, we well might bide  
The battle on Benledi's side.  
Thou couldst not?—well! Clan-Alpine's men  
Shall man the Trosachs' shaggy glen;  
Within Loch Katrine's gorge we'll fight,  
All in our maids' and matrons' sight,  
Each for his hearth and household fire,  
Father for child, and son for sire,  
Lover for maid beloved!—But why—  
Is it the breeze affects mine eye?  
Or dost thou come, ill-omened tear!  
A messenger of doubt or fear?  
No! sooner may the Saxon lance  
Unfix Benledi from his stance,  
Than doubt or terror can pierce through  
The unyielding heart of Roderick Dhu!  
'Tis stubborn as his trusty targe.  
Each to his post!—all know their charge."  
The pibroch sounds, the bands advance,  
The broadswords gleam, the banners dance,  
Obedient to the Chieftain's glance.—  
I turn me from the martial roar,  
And seek Coir-Uriskin once more.

---

160. Stance. Station; foundation.
IX.

Where is the Douglas? — he is gone;
And Ellen sits on the gray stone
Fast by the cave, and makes her moan,
While vainly Allan’s words of cheer
Are poured on her unheeding ear.

“He will return — dear lady, trust! —
With joy return; — he will — he must.
Well was it time to seek afar
Some refuge from impending war,
When e’en Clan Alpine’s rugged swarm
Are cowed by the approaching storm.

I saw their boats with many a light,
Floating the livelong yesternight,
Shifting like flashes darted forth
By the red streamers of the north;
I marked at morn how close they ride,
Thick moored by the lone islet’s side,
Like wild ducks couching in the fen
When stoops the hawk upon the glen.

Since this rude race dare not abide
The peril on the mainland side,
Shall not thy noble father’s care
Some safe retreat for thee prepare?”

X.

ELLEN.

“No, Allan, no! Pretext so kind
My wakeful terrors could not blind.

198. Red streamers of the North. Aurora Borealis, or northern lights.
When in such tender tone, yet grave,
Douglas a parting blessing gave,
The tear that glistened in his eye
Drowned not his purpose fixed and high.
My soul, though feminine and weak,
Can image his; e’en as the lake,
Itself disturbed by slightest stroke,
Reflects the invulnerable rock.
He hears report of battle rife,
He deems himself the cause of strife.
I saw him redden when the theme
Turned, Allan, on thine idle dream
Of Malcolm Graeme in fetters bound,
Which I, thou saidst, about him wound.
Think’st thou he trowed thine omen aught?
O no! ’twas apprehensive thought
For the kind youth,—for Roderick too—
Let me be just—that friend so true;
In danger both, and in our cause!
Minstrel, the Douglas dare not pause.
Why else that solemn warning given,
“If not on earth, we meet in heaven!”
Why else, to Cambus-kenneth’s fane,
If eve return him not again,
Am I to hie and make me known?
Alas! he goes to Scotland’s throne,
Buys his friends’ safety with his own;
He goes to do—what I had done,
Had Douglas’ daughter been his son!”

XI.

“Nay, lovely Ellen!—dearest, nay!
If aught should his return delay,
He only named yon holy fane
As fitting place to meet again.
Be sure he’s safe; and for the Græme,—
Heaven’s blessing on his gallant name!—
My visioned sight may yet prove true,
Nor bode of ill to him or you.

When did my gifted dream beguile?
Think of the stranger at the isle,
And think upon the harpings slow
That presaged this approaching woe!
Sooth was my prophecy of fear;
Believe it when it augurs cheer.
Would he had left this dismal spot!
Ill luck still haunts a fairy grot.
Of such a wondrous tale I know—
Dear lady, change that look of woe,
My harp was wont thy grief to cheer.”

ELLEN.

“Well, be it as thou wilt; I hear,
But cannot stop the bursting tear.”
The Minstrel tried his simple art,
But distant far was Ellen’s heart.

246. **Beguile.** Deceive. — 249. **Presaged.** Predicted; prophesied.
253. **Grot.** Grotto; secluded place.
XII.

Ballad.

ALICE BRAND.

Merry it is in the good greenwood,
When the mavis and merle are singing,
When the deer sweeps by, and the hounds are in cry,
And the hunter's horn is ringing.

"O Alice Brand, my native land
Is lost for love of you;
And we must hold by wood and wold,
As outlaws wont to do.

"O Alice, 'twas all for thy locks so bright,
And 'twas all for thine eyes so blue,
That on the night of our luckless flight
Thy brother bold I slew.

"Now must I teach to hew the beech
The hand that held the glaive,
For leaves to spread our lowly bed,
And stakes to fence our cave.

"And for vest of pall, thy fingers small,
That wont on harp to stray,
A cloak must shear from the slaughtered deer,
To keep the cold away."

"O Richard! if my brother died,
'Twas but a fatal chance;"
For darkling was the battle tried,
And fortune sped the lance.

"If pall and vair no more I wear,
Nor thou the crimson sheen,
As warm, we'll say, is the russet gray,
As gay the forest-green.

"And, Richard, if our lot be hard,
And lost thy native land,
Still Alice has her own Richard,
And he his Alice Brand."

XIII.
Ballad Continued.

'Tis merry, 'tis merry, in good greenwood;
So blithe the Lady Alice is singing;
On the beech's pride, and oak's brown side,
Lord Richard's axe is ringing.

Up spoke the moody Elfin King,
Who woned within the hill,—
Like wind in the porch of a ruined church,
His voice was ghostly shrill.

"Why sounds yon stroke on beech and oak,
Our moonlight circle's screen?
Or who comes here to chase the deer,
Beloved of our Elfin Queen?"


304. Elfin Queen. Fairies, if not positively malevolent, are capricious and easily offended. They are, like other proprietors of forests, peculiarly jealous of their rights of vert and venison (or, right to wood and game).
Or who may dare on wold to wear
The fairies' fatal green?

"Up, Urgan, up! to yon mortal hie,
For thou wert christened man;
For cross or sign thou wilt not fly,
For muttered word or ban.

"Lay on him the curse of the withered heart,
The curse of the sleepless eye;
Till he wish and pray that his life would part,
Nor yet find leave to die."

XIV.

Ballad Continued.

'Tis merry, 'tis merry, in good greenwood,
Though the birds have stilled their singing;
The evening blaze doth Alice raise,
And Richard is fagots bringing.

Up Urgan starts, that hideous dwarf,
Before Lord Richard stands,
And, as he crossed and blessed himself,
"I fear not sign," quoth the grizzly elf,
"That is made with bloody hands."

But out then spoke she, Alice Brand,
That woman void of fear,—
"And if there's blood upon his hand,
'Tis but the blood of deer."

306. Fatal green. As the Daoine Shi', or Men of Peace, wore green habits, they were supposed to take offence when any mortals ventured to assume their favorite color. Indeed, from some reason, which has been, perhaps, originally a general superstition, green is held in Scotland to be unlucky to particular tribes and counties. — Scott.
"Now loud thou liest, thou bold of mood!
It cleaves unto his hand,
The stain of thine own kindly blood,
The blood of Ethert Brand."

Then forward stepped she, Alice Brand,
And made the holy sign, —
"And if there's blood on Richard's hand,
A spotless hand is mine.

"And I conjure thee, demon elf,
By Him whom demons fear,
To show us whence thou art thyself,
And what thine errand here?"

XV.

Ballad Continued.

"'Tis merry, 'tis merry, in Fairy-land,
When fairy birds are singing,
When the court doth ride by their monarch's side,
With bit and bridle ringing:

"And gayly shines the Fairy-land —
But all is glistening show,
Like the idle gleam that December's beam
Can dart on ice and snow.

"And fading, like that varied gleam,
Is our inconstant shape,
Who now like knight and lady seem,
And now like dwarf and ape.

“It was between the night and day,
When the Fairy King has power,
That I sunk down in a sinful fray,
And ’twixt life and death was snatched away
To the joyless Elfin bower.

“But wist I of a woman bold,
Who thrice my brow durst sign,
I might regain my mortal mould,
As fair a form as thine.”

She crossed him once — she crossed him twice —
That lady was so brave;
The fouler grew his goblin hue,
The darker grew the cave.

She crossed him thrice, that lady bold;
He rose beneath her hand
The fairest knight on Scottish mould,
Her brother, Ethert Brand!

Merry it is in good greenwood,
When the mavis and merle are singing,
But merrier were they in Dunfermline gray,
When all the bells were ringing.

XVI.
Just as the minstrel sounds were stayed,
A stranger climbed the steepy glade;
His martial step, his stately mien,
His hunting-suit of Lincoln green,

371. Dunfermline. A town on the Firth of Forth; the seat of an extensive abbey, and the residence of the kings of Scotland in early times.
His eagle glance, remembrance claims—
'Tis Snowdoun's Knight, 'tis James Fitz-James.
Ellen beheld as in a dream,
Then, starting, scarce suppressed a scream:

"O stranger! in such hour of fear
What evil hap has brought thee here?"

"An evil hap how can it be
That bids me look again on thee?
By promise bound, my former guide
Met me betimes this morning-tide,
And marshalled over bank and bourne
The happy path of my return."

"The happy path!—what! said he naught
Of war, of battle to be fought,
Of guarded pass?" "No, by my faith!
Nor saw I aught could augur scathe."

"O haste thee, Allan, to the kern:
Yonder his tartans I discern;
Learn thou his purpose, and conjure
That he will guide the stranger sure!—
What prompted thee, unhappy man?
The meanest serf in Roderick's clan
Had not been bribed, by love or fear,
Unknown to him to guide thee here."

XVII.

"Sweet Ellen, dear my life must be,
Since it is worthy care from thee;
Yet life I hold but idle breath
When love or honor's weighed with death.
Then let me profit by my chance,
And speak my purpose bold at once.
I come to bear thee from a wild
Where ne'er before such blossom smiled,
By this soft hand to lead thee far
From frantic scenes of feud and war.
Near Bochastle my horses wait;
They bear us soon to Stirling gate.
I'll place thee in a lovely bower,
I'll guard thee like a tender flower—"
"O hush, Sir Knight! 'twere female art,
To say I do not read thy heart;
Too much, before, my selfish ear
Was idly soothed my praise to hear.
That fatal bait hath lured thee back,
In deathful hour o'er dangerous track;
And how, O how, can I atone
The wreck my vanity brought on!—
One way remains—I'll tell him all—
Yes! struggling bosom, forth it shall!
Thou, whose light folly bears the blame,
Buy thine own pardon with thy shame!
But first — my father is a man
Outlawed and exiled, under ban;
The price of blood is on his head,
With me 'twere infamy to wed.
Still wouldst thou speak? — then hear the truth!
Fitz-James, there is a noble youth—
If yet he is! — exposed for me
And mine to dread extremity —
Thou hast the secret of my heart;
Forgive, be generous, and depart!"

XVIII.

Fitz-James knew every wily train
A lady's fickle heart to gain,
But here he knew and felt them vain.
There shot no glance from Ellen's eye,
To give her steadfast speech the lie;
In maiden confidence she stood,
Though mantled in her cheek the blood,
And told her love with such a sigh
Of deep and hopeless agony,
As death had sealed her Malcolm's doom
And she sat sorrowing on his tomb.
Hope vanished from Fitz-James's eye,
But not with hope fled sympathy.
He proffered to attend her side,
As brother would a sister guide.
"O little know'st thou Roderick's heart!
Safer for both we go apart.
O haste thee, and from Allan learn
If thou mayst trust yon wily kern."
With hand upon his forehead laid,
The conflict of his mind to shade,
A parting step or two he made;
Then, as some thought had crossed his brain,
He paused, and turned, and came again.

437. Train. Persuasion or enticement.
455. Wily. Artful, sly.
XIX.

"Hear, lady, yet a parting word!—
It chanced in fight that my poor sword
Preserved the life of Scotland's lord.
This ring the grateful Monarch gave,
And bade, when I had boon to crave,
To bring it back, and boldly claim
The recompense that I would name.
Ellen, I am no courtly lord,
But one who lives by lance and sword,
Whose castle is his helm and shield,
His lordship the embattled field.
What from a prince can I demand,
Who neither reck of state nor land?
Ellen, thy hand— the ring is thine;
Each guard and usher knows the sign.
Seek thou the King without delay;
This signet shall secure thy way:
And claim thy suit, whate'er it be,
As ransom of his pledge to me."
He placed the golden circlet on,
Paused—kissed her hand—and then was gone.
The aged Minstrel stood aghast,
So hastily Fitz-James shot past.
He joined his guide, and wending down
The ridges of the mountain brown,
Across the stream they took their way
That joins Loch Katrine to Achray.

465. **Boon to Crave.** Favor to ask.
470. **Helmet.** Helmet; defensive armor for the head.
471. **His lordship the embattled field.** His estate the battle-field.
473. **Reck of.** Mind or care for. — 477. **Signet.** Seal in the ring.
XX.

All in the Trosachs’ glen was still,
Noontide was sleeping on the hill:
Sudden his guide whooped loud and high —
“Murdoch! was that a signal cry?” —
He stammered forth, “I shout to scare
Yon raven from his dainty fare.”
He looked — he knew the raven’s prey,
His own brave steed: “Ah! gallant gray!
For thee — for me, perchance — ’twere well
We ne’er had seen the Trosachs’ dell.—
Murdoch, move first — but silently;
Whistle or whoop, and thou shalt die!”
Jealous and sullen on they fared,
Each silent, each upon his guard.

XXI.

Now wound the path its dizzy ledge
Around a precipice’s edge,
When lo! a wasted female form,
Blighted by wrath of sun and storm,
In tattered weeds and wild array,
Stood on a cliff beside the way,
And glancing round her restless eye,
Upon the wood, the rock, the sky,
Seemed naught to mark, yet all to spy.
Her brow was wreathed with gaudy broom;
With gesture wild she waved a plume
Of feathers, which the eagles fling
To crag and cliff from dusky wing.
Such spoils her desperate step had sought,  
Where scarce was footing for the goat.  
The tartan plaid she first descried,  
And shrieked till all the rocks replied;  
As loud she laughed when near they drew,  
For then the Lowland garb she knew;  
And then her hands she wildly wrung,  
And then she wept, and then she sung—  
She sung!—the voice, in better time,  
Perchance to harp or lute might chime;  
And now, though strained and roughened, still  
Rung wildly sweet to dale and hill.

\[ \text{XXII.} \]

\textit{Song.}

They bid me sleep, they bid me pray,  
They say my brain is warped and wrung,—  
I cannot sleep on Highland brae,  
I cannot pray in Highland tongue.  
But were I now where Allan glides,  
Or heard my native Devan's tides,  
So sweetly would I rest, and pray  
That heaven would close my wintry day!

'Twas thus my hair they bade me braid,  
They made me to the church repair;  
It was my bridal morn they said,  
And my true love would meet me there.  
But woe betide the cruel guile  
That drowned in blood the morning smile!

531–532. \textit{Allan, Devan.} Small streams tributary to the Forth.  
539. \textit{Guile.} Deceit.
And woe betide the fairy dream!
I only waked to sob and scream.

XXIII.

"Who is this maid? what means her lay?
She hovers o'er the hollow way,
And flutters wide her mantle gray,
As the lone heron spreads his wing,
By twilight, o'er a haunted spring;"
"'Tis Blanche of Devan," Murdoch said,
"A crazed and captive Lowland maid,
Ta'en on the morn she was a bride,
When Roderick forayed Devan-side.
The gay bridegroom resistance made,
And felt our Chief's unconquered blade.
I marvel she is now at large,
But oft she 'scapes from Maudlin's charge.—
Hence, brain-sick fool!" — He raised his bow:—
"Now, if thou strik'st her but one blow,
I'll pitch thee from the cliff as far
As ever peasant pitched a bar!"
"Thanks, champion, thanks!" the Maniac cried,
And pressed her to Fitz-James's side.
"See the gray pennons I prepare,
To seek my true love through the air!
I will not lend that savage groom,
To break his fall, one downy plume!
No! — deep amid disjointed stones,
The wolves shall batten on his bones,

551. For'ayed. Plundered.
And then shall his detested plaid,
By bush and brier in mid-air stayed,
Wave forth a banner fair and free,
Meet signal for their revelry."

XXIV.

"Hush thee, poor maiden, and be still!"
"O! thou look'st kindly, and I will.
Mine eye has dried and wasted been,
But still it loves the Lincoln green;
And, though mine ear is all unstrung,
Still, still it loves the Lowland tongue.

"For O my sweet William was forester true,
    He stole poor Blanche's heart away!
His coat it was all of the greenwood hue,
    And so blithely he trilled the Lowland lay!

"It was not that I meant to tell . . .
But thou art wise and guessest well."
Then, in a low and broken tone,
And hurried note, the song went on.
Still on the Clansman fearfully
She fixed her apprehensive eye,
Then turned it on the Knight, and then
Her look glanced wildly o'er the glen.

XXV.

"The toils are pitched, and the stakes are set,
    Ever sing merrily, merrily;

578. O my sweet William. The sight of the Lincoln green reminds
Blanche of her husband, and she is led to warn the stranger of his peril.
The bows they bend, and the knives they whet,
    Hunters live so cheerily.

"It was a stag, a stag of ten,
    Bearing its branches sturdily;
He came stately down the glen,—
    Ever sing hardly, hardly.

"It was there he met with a wounded doe,
    She was bleeding deathfully;
She warned him of the toils below,
    O, so faithfully, faithfully!

"He had an eye, and he could heed,—
    Ever sing warily, warily;
He had a foot, and he could speed,—
    Hunters watch so narrowly."

XXVI.

Fitz-James’s mind was passion-tossed,
When Ellen’s hints and fears were lost;
But Murdoch’s shout suspicion wrought,
And Blanche’s song conviction brought.
Not like a stag that spies the snare,
But lion of the hunt aware,
He waved at once his blade on high,
"Disclose thy treachery, or die!"
Forth at full speed the Clansman flew,
But in his race his bow he drew.

593. Hunters live so cheerily, etc. The hunters are Clan-Alpine’s men; the stag of ten is Fitz-James; the wounded doe is Blanche herself.
594. Stag of ten. Stag having ten branches on his horns.
The shaft just grazed Fitz-James's crest,
And thrilled in Blanche's faded breast.—
Murdoch of Alpine! prove thy speed,
For ne'er had Alpine's son such need;
With heart of fire, and foot of wind,
The fierce avenger is behind!
Fate judges of the rapid strife—
The forfeit death—the prize is life;
Thy kindred ambush lies before,
Close couched upon the heathery moor;
Them couldst thou reach!—it may not be—
Thine ambushed kin thou ne'er shalt see,
The fiery Saxon gains on thee!—
Resistless speeds the deadly thrust,
As lightning strikes the pine to dust;
With foot and hand Fitz-James must strain
Ere he can win his blade again.
Bent o'er the fallen with falcon eye,
He grimly smiled to see him die,
Then slower wended back his way,
Where the poor maiden bleeding lay.

XXVII.
She sat beneath the birchen tree,
Her elbow resting on her knee;
She had withdrawn the fatal shaft,—
And gazed on it, and feebly laughed;
Her wreath of broom and feathers gray,
Daggled with blood, beside her lay.

The Knight to stanch the life-stream tried,—
"Stranger, it is in vain!" she cried.
"This hour of death has given me more
Of reason's power than years before;
For, as these ebbing veins decay,
My frenzied visions fade away.
A helpless injured wretch I die,
And something tells me in thine eye
That thou wert mine avenger born.
Seest thou this tress?—O, still I've worn
This little tress of yellow hair,
Through danger, frenzy, and despair!
It once was bright and clear as thine,
But blood and tears have dimmed its shine.
I will not tell thee when 'twas shred,
Nor from what guiltless victim's head,—
My brain would turn!—but it shall wave
Like plumage on thy helmet brave,
Till sun and wind shall bleach the stain,
And thou wilt bring it me again.
I waver still.—O God! more bright
Let reason beam her parting light!—
O, by thy knighthood's honored sign,
And for thy life preserved by mine,
When thou shalt see a darksome man,
Who boasts him Chief of Alpine's Clan,
With tartans broad and shadowy plume,
And hand of blood, and brow of gloom,
Be thy heart bold, thy weapon strong,
And wreak poor Blanche of Devan's wrong!—

They watch for thee by pass and fell...
Avoid the path...O God!...farewell.”

XXVIII.
A kindly heart had brave Fitz-James;
Fast poured his eyes at pity’s claims;
And now, with mingled grief and ire,
He saw the murdered maid expire.
“God, in my need, be my relief,
As I wreak this on yonder Chief!”
A lock from Blanche’s tresses fair
He blended with her bridegroom’s hair;
The mingled braid in blood he dyed,
And placed it on his bonnet-side:
“By Him whose word is truth, I swear,
No other favor will I wear,
Till this sad token I imbrue
In the best blood of Roderick Dhu!—
But hark! what means yon faint halloo?
The chase is up,—but they shall know,
The stag at bay’s a dangerous foe.”
Barred from the known but guarded way,
Through copse and cliffs Fitz-James must stray,
And oft must change his desperate track,
By stream and precipice turned back.
Heartless, fatigued, and faint, at length,
From lack of food and loss of strength,
He couched him in a thicket hoar,
And thought his toils and perils o’er:—

680. Wreak. Avenge.—686. Favor. Gift of a lady to a Knight, as a glove or a scarf to be worn by him.—687. Imbrue. Drench.
"Of all my rash adventures past,
This frantic feat must prove the last!
Who e'er so mad but might have guessed
That all this Highland hornet's nest
Would muster up in swarms so soon
As e'er they heard of bands at Doune? —
Like bloodhounds now they search me out, —
Hark, to the whistle and the shout! —
If farther through the wilds I go,
I only fall upon the foe:
I'll couch me here till evening gray,
Then darkling try my dangerous way."

XXIX.
The shades of eve come slowly down,
The woods are wrapt in deeper brown,
The owl awakens from her dell,
The fox is heard upon the fell;
Enough remains of glimmering light
To guide the wanderer's steps aright,
Yet not enough from far to show
His figure to the watchful foe.
With cautious step and ear awake,
He climbs the crag and threads the brake.
And not the summer solstice there
Tempered the midnight mountain air,
But every breeze that swept the wold
Benumbed his drenched limbs with cold.
In dread, in danger, and alone,
Famished and chilled, through ways unknown,

722. Summer solstice. The longest day, when the heat is greatest.
CANTO IV.

THE PROPHECY.

Tangled and steep, he journeyed on;
Till, as a rock's huge point he turned,
A watch-fire close before him burned.

XXX.

Beside its embers red and clear,
Basked in his plaid a mountaineer;
And up he sprung with sword in hand,—
"Thy name and purpose! Saxon, stand!"
"A stranger." "What dost thou require?"
"Rest and a guide, and food and fire.
My life's beset, my path is lost,
The gale has chilled my limbs with frost."
"Art thou a friend to Roderick?" "No"
"Thou dar'st not call thyself a foe?"
"I dare! to him and all the band
He brings to aid his murderous hand."
"Bold words!—but, though the beast of game
The privilege of chase may claim,
Though space and law the stag we lend,
Ere hound we slip or bow we bend,
Who ever recked, where, how, or when,
The prowling fox was trapped or slain?
Thus treacherous scouts,—yet sure they lie,
Who say thou cam'st a secret spy!"—
"They do, by heaven!—come Roderick Dhu,
And of his clan the boldest two,
And let me but till morning rest,
I write the falsehood on their crest."

746. Slip. Let loose for the game.
"If by the blaze I mark aright,
Thou bear'st the belt and spur of Knight."
"Then by these tokens mayst thou know
Each proud oppressor's mortal foe."
"Enough, enough; sit down and share
A soldier's couch, a soldier's fare."

XXXI.

He gave him of his Highland cheer,
The hardened flesh of mountain deer;
Dry fuel on the fire he laid,
And bade the Saxon share his plaid.
He tended him like welcome guest,

Then thus his further speech addressed: —
"Stranger, I am to Roderick Dhu
A clansman born, a kinsman true;
Each word against his honor spoke
Demands of me avenging stroke;
Yet more, — upon thy fate, 'tis said,
A mighty augury is laid.
It rests with me to wind my horn,—
Thou art with numbers overborne;
It rests with me, here, brand to brand,
Worn as thou art, to bid thee stand:
But, not for clan, nor kindred's cause,
Will I depart from honor's laws;
To assail a wearied man were shame,
And stranger is a holy name;"

762. **Hardened flesh.** The Scottish Highlanders in former times had a way of preparing their venison without cooking, by simply pressing it between two pieces of wood, so as to force out the blood and render it extremely hard. This was considered a great delicacy.
Guidance and rest, and food and fire,  
In vain he never must require.  
Then rest thee here till dawn of day;  
Myself will guide thee on the way,  
O'er stock and stone, through watch and ward,  
Till past Clan-Alpine's outmost guard,  
As far as Coilantogle's ford;  
From thence thy warrant is thy sword."  
"I take thy courtesy, by heaven,  
As freely as 'tis nobly given!"  
"Well, rest thee; for the bittern's cry  
Sings us the lake's wild lullaby."  
With that he shook the gathered heath,  
And spread his plaid upon the wreath;  
And the brave foemen, side by side,  
Lay peaceful down like brothers tried,  
And slept until the dawning beam  
Purpled the mountain and the stream.

785. **Through watch and ward.** Through the midst of those who keep watch by night and guard by day.  
787. **Coilantogle's ford.** On arriving at Coilantogle's ford, near the foot of Loch Vennachar, Fitz-James, having passed beyond the limits of the lawless Highlands, came within the district loyal to the Scottish king, and, therefore, needed no further protection from the Highland chief.  
788. **Warrant.** Safeguard.
OUTLINE OF CANTO FIFTH.

After a hasty morning meal the two start upon their journey, and the Gael's enquiries as to the knight's object in thus venturing in these wilds without a pass from the chief lead to an interesting conversation betwixt them. Fitz-James shows that Roderick's suspicions of a war-gathering are mistaken, but hints that his preparations may possibly lead to an encounter which had not been intended. He avows his enmity against Roderick, with whom he has vowed to match himself, and expresses the keenest desire to meet "the rebel chieftain and his band." "Have, then, thy wish," is the reply. His companion's shrill signal makes the whole hillside bristle with armed men, who have been lying concealed among the heather and the bracken, and the guide proclaims himself the very man whom he seeks. At a fresh sign the warriors disappear as suddenly as they sprang to light, and the two pursue their course. They pass the foot of Lake Vennachar, and at last reach the ford, which is the limit of Roderick's protection. There Fitz-James must defend himself with his own sword. The Gael, to make the fight more equal, throws away his targe, and thus the science which makes the good blade both sword and shield gives the knight the advantage over his adversary. The latter, thrice severely wounded, loses his sword, but makes a final effort, and springs at his opponent's throat. Clasped in his strong arms the knight falls under him, and the issue of the fight would have been changed had not Roderick turned giddy from loss of blood and missed his aim. Poor Blanche is thus revenged. The victor winds his bugle, and four attendants come galloping to the spot. Leaving two of them to look to the wounded man, he hastens with the others back to Stirling. As they come to the castle they catch sight of the Douglas, who comes to give himself up to the king
in the hope of liberating the Græme, and of saving Roderick from a calamitous war. On his arrival he finds the town in a bustle of preparation for the burghers' sports, and determines to take part in them, and so introduce himself to the king. He proves victor in all that he undertakes, so that the multitude begin to suspect who he is; but the king gives him the prize as to an utter stranger. All this he bears patiently; but when his hound, Ellen's playfellow, is maltreated by the king's huntsman, he can bear it no longer, and, with a sound cuff, stretches the offender on the ground, and proclaims himself and his purpose in coming. He is carried off captive to the castle. The people attempt a rescue, but are appeased by Douglas himself, and retire, though with gloomy forebodings of his fate.

While the king is brooding over the fickleness of the crowd, a messenger comes from the Earl of Mar to warn him that Clan-Alpine is rising, and that he must confine his sport to guarded ground. The earl himself is gone to quell the rising, and hopes soon to encounter the foe. James sends in all speed to stay the army's march, as Roderick is already a captive, and the people must not suffer for his crimes. But the message, as will be seen, comes too late. — Taylor.
Canto Fifth.

THE COMBAT.

I.

Fair as the earliest beam of eastern light,
When first, by the bewildered pilgrim spied,
It smiles upon the dreary brow of night,
And silvers o'er the torrent's foaming tide,
And lights the fearful path on mountain-side,—
Fair as that beam, although the fairest far,
Giving to horror grace, to danger pride,
Shine martial Faith, and Courtesy's bright star,
Through all the wreckful storms that cloud the brow of War.

II.

That early beam, so fair and sheen,
Was twinkling through the hazel screen,
When, rousing at its glimmer red,
The warriors left their lowly bed,
Looked out upon the dappled sky,
Muttered their soldier matins by,
And then awaked their fire, to steal,
As short and rude, their soldier meal.
That o'er, the Gael around him threw

His graceful plaid of varied hue,
And, true to promise, led the way,
By thicket green and mountain gray.
A wildering path!—they winded now
Along the precipice’s brow,
Commanding the rich scenes beneath,
The windings of the Forth and Teith,
And all the vales between that lie,
Till Stirling’s turrets melt in sky;
Then, sunk in copse, their farthest glance
Gained not the length of horseman’s lance.
'Twas oft so steep, the foot was fain
Assistance from the hand to gain;
So tangled oft that, bursting through,
Each hawthorn shed her showers of dew,—
That diamond dew, so pure and clear,
It rivals all but Beauty’s tear!

III.

At length they came where, stern and steep,
The hill sinks down upon the deep.
Here Vennachar in silver flows,
There, ridge on ridge, Benledi rose;
Ever the hollow path twined on,
Beneath steep bank and threatening stone;
A hundred men might hold the post
With hardihood against a host.
The rugged mountain’s scanty cloak
Was dwarfish shrubs of birch and oak,
With shingles bare, and cliffs between,
And patches bright of bracken green,

46. Shingles. Gravel.
And heather black, that waved so high,
It held the copse in rivalry.
But where the lake slept deep and still,
Dank osiers fringed the swamp and hill;
And oft both path and hill were torn,
Where wintry torrent down had borne,
And heaped upon the cumbered land
Its wreck of gravel, rocks, and sand.
So toilsome was the road to trace,
The guide, abating of his pace,
Led slowly through the pass's jaws,
And asked Fitz-James by what strange cause
He sought these wilds, traversed by few,
Without a pass from Roderick Dhu.

IV.

"Brave Gael, my pass, in danger tried,
Hangs in my belt and by my side;
Yet, sooth to tell," the Saxon said,
"I dreamt not now to claim its aid.
When here, but three days since, I came,
Bewildered in pursuit of game,
All seemed as peaceful and as still
As the mist slumbering on yon hill;
Thy dangerous Chief was then afar,
Nor soon expected back from war.
Thus said, at least, my mountain-guide,
Though deep perchance the villain lied."
"Yet why a second venture try?"
"A warrior thou, and ask me why! —

Moves our free course by such fixed cause
As gives the poor mechanic laws?
Enough, I sought to drive away
The lazy hours of peaceful day;
Slight cause will then suffice to guide
A Knight's free footsteps far and wide,—
A falcon flown, a greyhound strayed,
The merry glance of mountain maid;
Or, if a path be dangerous known,
The danger's self is lure alone."

"Thy secret keep, I urge thee not;—
Yet, ere again ye sought this spot,
Say, heard ye naught of Lowland war,
Against Clan-Alpine, raised by Mar?"
"No, by my word;—of bands prepared
To guard King James's sports I heard;
Nor doubt I aught, but, when they hear
This muster of the mountaineer,
Their pennons will abroad be flung,
Which else in Doune had peaceful hung."
"Free be they flung! for we were loath
Their silken folds should feast the moth.
Free be they flung!—as free shall wave
Clan-Alpine's pine in banner brave.
But, stranger, peaceful since you came,
Bewildered in the mountain-game,

85. **Lure.** Enticement; that which invites by the prospect of advantage or pleasure.—93. **Muster.** Gathering.—94. **Pennons.** Flags or streamers.
95. **Doune.** Note, Canto V., line 492.
Whence the bold boast by which you show
Vich-Alpine's vowed and mortal foe?"
"Warrior, but yester-morn I knew
Naught of thy Chieftain, Roderick Dhu,
Save as an outlawed, desperate man,
The chief of a rebellious clan,
Who, in the Regent's court and sight,
With ruffian dagger stabbed a knight;
Yet this alone might from his part
Sever each true and loyal heart."

VI.

Wrathful at such arraignment foul,
Dark lowered the clansman's sable scowl.
A space he paused, then sternly said,
"And hearest thou why he drew his blade?"
Hearest thou that shameful word and blow
Brought Roderick's vengeance on his foe?
What recked the Chieftain if he stood
On Highland heath or Holy-Rood?
He rights such wrong where it is given,
If it were in the court of heaven."
"Still was it outrage;—yet, 'tis true,
Not then claimed sovereignty his due;
While Albany with feeble hand
Held borrowed truncheon of command,
The young King, mewed in Stirling tower,
Was stranger to respect and power.

Stewart, Duke of Albany, was regent or ruler during the minority of the
127. Stranger to respect and power. There is scarcely a more dis-
But then, thy Chieftain's robber life!—
Winning mean prey by causeless strife,
Wrenching from ruined Lowland swain
His herds and harvest reared in vain,—
Methinks a soul like thine should scorn
The spoils from such foul foray borne.”

VII.

The Gael beheld him grim the while,
And answered with disdainful smile:
“Saxon, from yonder mountain high,
I marked thee send delighted eye
Far to the south and east, where lay,
Extended in succession gay,
Deep waving fields and pastures green,
With gentle slopes and groves between:—
These fertile plains, that softened vale,
Were once the birthright of the Gael,
The stranger came with iron hand,
And from our fathers reft the land.
Where dwell we now? See, rudely swell
Crag over crag, and fell o'er fell.
Ask we this savage hill we tread
For fattened steer or household bread,
Ask we for flocks these shingles dry,
And well the mountain might reply,—
'To you, as to your sires of yore,
Belong the target and claymore!

orderly period in Scottish history than that which succeeded the battle of
Flodden, and occupied the minority of James V. Feuds of ancient stand-
ing broke out like old wounds, and every quarrel among the independent
nobility, which occurred daily, and almost hourly, gave rise to fresh blood-
shed. Scott.
I give you shelter in my breast,  
Your own good blades must win the rest.'

Pent in this fortress of the North,  
Think'st thou we will not sally forth,  
To spoil the spoiler as we may,  
And from the robber rend the prey?

Ay, by my soul! — While on yon plain
The Saxon rears one shock of grain,
While of ten thousand herds there strays
But one along yon river's maze,—

The Gael, of plain and river heir,
Shall with strong hand redeem his share.

Where live the mountain Chiefs who hold
That plundering Lowland field and fold
Is aught but retribution true?
Seek other cause 'gainst Roderick Dhu.'

VIII.

Answered Fitz-James: "And, if I sought,
Think'st thou no other could be brought?
What deem ye of my path waylaid?
My life given o'er to ambuscade?"

156. _Pent._ Shut up. — 161. _Shock._ A pile of sheaves or bundles of grain. — 163. _Maze._ Winding course.

169. _Seek other cause 'gainst Roderick Dhu._ So far, indeed, was a Creagh, or foray, from being held disgraceful, that a young chief was always expected to show his talents for command, so soon as he assumed it, by leading his clan on a successful enterprise of this nature, either against a neighboring sept, for which constant feuds usually furnished an apology, or against the Saxons, or Lowlanders, for which no apology was necessary. The Gael, great traditional historians, never forgot that the Lowlands had, at some remote period, been the property of their Celtic forefathers, which furnished an ample vindication of all the ravages that they could make on the unfortunate districts which lay within their reach. _Scott._

173. _Ambuscade._ A concealed place where troops lie hidden.
“As of a meed to rashness due:
Hadst thou sent warning fair and true,—
I seek my hound or falcon strayed,
I seek, good faith, a Highland maid,—
Free hadst thou been to come and go;
But secret path marks secret foe.
Nor yet for this, even as a spy,
Hadst thou, unheard, been doomed to die,
Save to fulfil an augury."
“Well, let it pass; nor will I now
Fresh cause of enmity avow,
To chafe thy mood and cloud thy brow.
Enough, I am by promise tied
To match me with this man of pride:
Twice have I sought Clan-Alpine’s glen
In peace; but when I come again,
I come with banner, brand, and bow,
As leader seeks his mortal foe.
For love-lorn swain in lady’s bower
Ne’er panted for the appointed hour,
As I, until before me stand
This rebel Chieftain and his band!”

IX.

“Have then thy wish!” — He whistled shrill,
And he was answered from the hill;
Wild as the scream of the curlew,
From crag to crag the signal flew.
Instant, through copse and heath, arose
Bonnets and spears and bended bows;

198. Curlew. Wading-bird frequenting the sea-shore in winter and the mountains in summer.
On right, on left, above, below,
Sprung up at once the lurking foe;
From shingles gray their lances start,
The bracken bush sends forth the dart,
The rushes and the willow-wand
Are bristling into axe and brand,
And every tuft of broom gives life
To plaided warrior armed for strife.
That whistle garrisoned the glen
At once with full five hundred men,
As if the yawning hill to heaven
A subterranean host had given.
Watching their leader's beck and will,
All silent there they stood and still.
Like the loose crags whose threatening mass
Lay tottering o'er the hollow pass,
As if an infant's touch could urge
Their headlong passage down the verge,
With step and weapon forward flung,
Upon the mountain-side they hung.
The Mountaineer cast glance of pride
Along Benledi's living side,
Then fixed his eye and sable brow
Full on Fitz-James: "How say'st thou now?"
These are Clan-Alpine's warriors true;
And, Saxon,—I am Roderick Dhu!"

X.
Fitz-James was brave:—though to his heart
The life-blood thrilled with sudden start,
He manned himself with dauntless air, 230
Returned the Chief his haughty stare,
His back against a rock he bore,
And firmly placed his foot before:—
"Come one, come all! this rock shall fly
From its firm base as soon as I."
Sir Roderick marked, — and in his eyes
Respect was mingled with surprise,
And the stern joy which warriors feel
In foeman worthy of their steel.
Short space he stood — then waved his hand:
Down sunk the disappearing band;
Each warrior vanished where he stood,
In broom or bracken, heath or wood;
Sunk brand and spear and bended bow,
In osiers pale and copses low;
It seemed as if their mother Earth
Had swallowed up her warlike birth.
The wind’s last breath had tossed in air
Pennon and plaid and plumage fair, —
The next but swept a lone hill-side,
Where heath and fern were waving wide:
The sun’s last glance was glinted back
From spear and glaive, from targe and jack, —
The next, all unreflected, shone
On bracken green and cold gray stone.

XI.
Fitz-James looked round, — yet scarce believed
The witness that his sight received;

232. **Glinted.** Flashed. — 253. **From targe and jack.** From shield
and coat of armor. The peasant’s coat of armor was a leathern jacket.
Such apparition well might seem
Delusion of a dreadful dream.
Sir Roderick in suspense he eyed,
And to his look the Chief replied:
"Fear naught — nay, that I need not say —
But — doubt not aught from mine array.
Thou art my guest; — I pledged my word
As far as Coilantogle ford:
Nor would I call a clansman's brand
For aid against one valiant hand,
Though on our strife lay every vale
Rent by the Saxon from the Gael.
So move we on; — I only meant
To show the reed on which you leant,
Deeming this path you might pursue
Without a pass from Roderick Dhu."
They moved; — I said Fitz-James was brave
As ever knight that belted glaive,
Yet dare not say that now his blood
Kept on its wont and tempered flood,
As, following Roderick's stride, he drew
That seeming lonesome pathway through,
Which yet by fearful proof was rife
With lances, that, to take his life,
Waited but signal from a guide,
So late dishonored and defied.

258. **Apparition.** Sudden appearance. — 259. **Delusion.** Deception.
260. **Suspense.** Dread uncertainty.
273. **Without a pass from Roderick Dhu.** This incident, like some other passages in the poem, illustrative of the character of the ancient Gael, is not imaginary, but borrowed from fact. The Highlanders, with the inconsistency of most nations in the same state, were alternately capable of great exertions of generosity, and of cruel revenge and perfidy. Scott.
Ever, by stealth, his eye sought round
The vanished guardians of the ground,
And still from copse and heather deep
Fancy saw spear and broadsword peep,
And in the plover's shrilly strain
The signal whistle heard again.
Nor breathed he free till far behind
The pass was left; for then they wind
Along a wide and level green,
Where neither tree nor tuft was seen,
Nor rush nor bush of broom was near,
To hide a bonnet or a spear.

XII.

The Chief in silence strode before,
And reached that torrent's sounding shore,
Which, daughter of three mighty lakes,
From Vennachar in silver breaks,
Sweeps through the plain, and ceaseless mines
On Bochastle the mouldering lines,
Where Rome, the Empress of the world,
Of yore her eagle wings unfurled.
And here his course the Chieftain stayed,

301. Bochastle. The torrent which discharges itself from Loch Vennachar, the lowest and eastmost of the three lakes which form the scenery adjoining to the Trosachs, sweeps through a flat and extensive moor called Bochastle. Upon a small eminence called the Dun of Bochastle, and, indeed, on the plain itself, are some intrenchments which have been thought Roman. Scott.
303. Eagle wings unfurled. The eagle was the principal standard of the Roman army.
Threw down his target and his plaid,
And to the Lowland warrior said:
"Bold Saxon! to his promise just,
Vich-Alpine has discharged his trust.
This murderous Chief, this ruthless man,
This head of a rebellious clan,
Hath led thee safe, through watch and ward,
Far past Clan-Alpine's outmost guard.
Now, man to man, and steel to steel,
A Chieftain's vengeance thou shalt feel.
See, here all vantageless I stand,
Armed like thyself with single brand;
For this is Coilantogle ford,
And thou must keep thee with thy sword."

XIII.
The Saxon paused: "I ne'er delayed,
When foeman bade me draw my blade;
Nay more, brave Chief, I vowed thy death;
Yet sure thy fair and generous faith,
And my deep debt for life preserved,
A better meed have well deserved:
Can naught but blood or feud atone?
Are there no means?"—"No, stranger, none!
And hear,—to fire thy flagging zeal,—
The Saxon cause rests on thy steel;
For thus spoke Fate by prophet bred
Between the living and the dead:
'Who spills the foremost foeman's life,
His party conquers in the strife.'"
"Then, by my word," the Saxon said,
"The riddle is already read.
Seek yonder brake beneath the cliff,—
There lies Red Murdoch, stark and stiff.
Thus Fate hath solved her prophecy;
Then yield to Fate, and not to me.
To James at Stirling let us go,
When, if thou wilt be still his foe,
Or if the King shall not agree
To grant thee grace and favor free,
I plight mine honor, oath, and word
That, to thy native strengths restored,
With each advantage shalt thou stand
That aids thee now to guard thy land.”

XIV.

Dark lightning flashed from Roderick’s eye:
“Soars thy presumption, then, so high,
Because a wretched kern ye slew,
Homage to name to Roderick Dhu?
He yields not, he, to man nor Fate!
Thou add’st but fuel to my hate;—
My clansman’s blood demands revenge.
Not yet prepared? — By heaven, I change
My thought, and hold thy valor light
As that of some vain carpet knight,
Who ill deserved my courteous care,
And whose best boast is but to wear
A braid of his fair lady’s hair.”
“I thank thee, Roderick, for the word!
It nerves my heart, it steels my sword;

336. Carpet knight. One who wins his honors in royal halls by favoritism rather than by bravery on the battle-field.
For I have sworn this braid to stain
In the best blood that warms thy vein.
Now, truce, farewell! and, ruth, begone! —
Yet think not that by thee alone,
Proud Chief! can courtesy be shown;
Though not from copse, or heath, or cairn,
Start at my whistle clansmen stern,
Of this small horn one feeble blast
Would fearful odds against thee cast.
But fear not — doubt not — which thou wilt —
We try this quarrel hilt to hilt."
Then each at once his falchion drew,
Each on the ground his scabbard threw,
Each looked to sun and stream and plain
As what they ne’er might see again;
Then foot and point and eye opposed,
In dubious strife they darkly closed.

XV.

Ill fared it then with Roderick Dhu,
That on the field his targe he threw,
Whose brazen studs and tough bull-hide
Had death so often dashed aside;
For, trained abroad his arms to wield,
Fitz-James’s blade was sword and shield.
He practised every pass and ward,
To thrust, to strike, to feint, to guard;

380. His targe he threw, etc. A round target of light wood, covered
with strong leather, and studded with brass or iron, was a necessary part
of a Highlander’s equipment. In charging regular troops, they received
the thrust of the bayonet in this buckler, twisted it aside, and used the
broadsword against the encumbered soldier. Scott.
386. Feint. To pretend an attack.
While less expert, though stronger far,
The Gael maintained unequal war.
Three times in closing strife they stood,
And thrice the Saxon blade drank blood;
No stinted draught, no scanty tide,
The gushing flood the tartans dyed.
Fierce Roderick felt the fatal drain,
And showered his blows like wintry rain;
And, as firm rock or castle-roof
Against the winter shower is proof,
The foe, invulnerable still,
Foiled his wild rage by steady skill;
Till, at advantage ta’en, his brand
Forced Roderick’s weapon from his hand,
And backward borne upon the lea,
Brought the proud Chieftain to his knee.

XVI.

“Now yield thee, or by Him who made
The world, thy heart’s blood dies my blade!”
“Thy threats, thy mercy, I defy!
Let recreant yield, who fears to die.”
Like adder darting from his coil,
Like wolf that dashes through the toil,
Like mountain-cat who guards her young,
Full at Fitz-James’s throat he sprung;
Received, but recked not of a wound,
And locked his arms his foeman round.—
Now, gallant Saxon, hold thine own!
No maiden’s hand is round thee thrown!

That desperate grasp thy frame might feel
Through bars of brass and triple steel!
They tug, they strain! down, down they go,
The Gael above, Fitz-James below.
The Chieftain's gripe his throat compressed,
His knee was planted on his breast;
His clotted locks he backward threw,
Across his brow his hand he drew,
From blood and mist to clear his sight,
Then gleamed aloft his dagger bright!
But hate and fury ill supplied
The stream of life's exhausted tide,
And all too late the advantage came,
To turn the odds of deadly game;
For, while the dagger gleamed on high,
Reeled soul and sense, reeled brain and eye.
Down came the blow! but in the heath
The erring blade found bloodless sheath.
The struggling foe may now unclasp
The fainting Chief's relaxing grasp;
Unwounded from the dreadful close,
But breathless all, Fitz-James arose.

XVII.

He faltered thanks to Heaven for life,
Redeemed, unhoped, from desperate strife;
Next on his foe his look he cast,
Whose every gasp appeared his last;
In Roderick's gore he dipped the braid,—
"Poor Blanche! thy wrongs are dearly paid;"

Yet with thy foe must die or live
The praise that faith and valor give."
With that he blew a bugle note,
Undid the collar from his throat,
Unbonneted, and by the wave
Sat down his brow and hands to lave.
Then faint afar are heard the feet
Of rushing steeds in gallop fleet;
The sounds increase, and now are seen
Four mounted squires in Lincoln green;
Two who bear lance, and two who lead
By loosened rein a saddled steed;
Each onward held his headlong course,
And by Fitz-James reined up his horse,—
With wonder viewed the bloody spot,—
"Exclaim not, gallants! question not.—
You, Herbert and Luffness, alight,
And bind the wounds of yonder knight;
Let the gray palfrey bear his weight,
We destined for a fairer freight,
And bring him on to Stirling straight;
I will before at better speed,
To seek fresh horse and fitting weed.
The sun rides high; — I must be bounê
To see the archer-game at noon;
But lightly Bayard clears the lea.—
De Vaux and Herries, follow me.

466. Bounê. Ready.
“Stand, Bayard, stand!” — the steed obeyed,
With arching neck and bended head,
And glancing eye and quivering ear,
As if he loved his lord to hear.
No foot Fitz-James in stirrup stayed,
No grasp upon the saddle laid,
But wreathed his left hand in the mane,
And lightly bounded from the plain,
Turned on the horse his armed heel,
And stirred his courage with the steel.
Bounded the fiery steed in air,
The rider sat erect and fair,
Then like a bolt from steel crossbow
Forth launched, along the plain they go.
They dashed that rapid torrent through,
And up Carhonie’s hill they flew;
Still at the gallop pricked the Knight,
His merrymen followed as they might.
Along thy banks, swift Teith! they ride,
And in the race they mock thy tide;
Torry and Lendrick now are past,
And Deanstown lies behind them cast;
They rise, the banded towers of Doune,
They sink in distant woodland soon;

486. **Pricked.** Spurred or rode.
490–497. Torry, Lendrick, Dernstown, Blair-Drummond, Ochtertyre, and Kier lie on the banks of the Teith, and were all familiar to Scott in his early years.
492. **The banded towers of Doune.** The ruins of Doune Castle, formerly the residence of the Earls of Menteith, now the property of the Earl of Moray, are situated at the confluence of the Ardoch and the Teith. **Scott.**
Blair-Drummond sees the hoofs strike fire, 495
They sweep like breeze through Ochtertyre;
They mark just glance and disappear
The lofty brow of ancient Kier;
They bathe their coursers' sweltering sides,
Dark Forth! amid thy sluggish tides,
And on the opposing shore take ground, 500
With splash, with scramble, and with bound.
Right-hand they leave thy cliffs, Craig-Forth!
And soon the bulwark of the North,
Gray Stirling, with her towers and town,
Upon their fleet career looked down. 505

XIX.

As up the flinty path they strained,
Sudden his steed the leader reined;
A signal to his squire he flung,
Who instant to his stirrup sprung: —
"Seest thou, De Vaux, yon woodsman gray, 510
Who townward holds the rocky way,
Of stature tall and poor array?
Mark'st thou the firm, yet active stride,
With which he scales the mountain-side?
Know'st thou from whence he comes, or whom?" 515
"No, by my word; — a burly groom
He seems, who in the field or chase
A baron's train would nobly grace —"
"Out, out, De Vaux! can fear supply,
And jealousy, no sharper eye?" 520

504. Stirling. This castle was one of the principal fortresses of Scotland, and the residence of James V. Standing upon a lofty rock, it commands a fine view of the surrounding country and Firth of Forth.
Afar, ere to the hill he drew,
That stately form and step I knew;
Like form in Scotland is not seen,
Treads not such step on Scottish green.
'Tis James of Douglas, by Saint Serle!
The uncle of the banished Earl.
Away, away, to court, to show
The near approach of dreaded foe:
The King must stand upon his guard;
Douglas and he must meet prepared.”
Then right-hand wheeled their steeds, and straight
They won the Castle’s postern gate.

XX.
The Douglas, who had bent his way
From Cambus-kenneth’s abbey gray,
Now, as he climbed the rocky shelf,
Held sad communion with himself:—
“Yes! all is true my fears could frame;
A prisoner lies the noble Græme,
And fiery Roderick soon will feel
The vengeance of the royal steel.
I, only I, can ward their fate,—
God grant the ransom come not late!
The Abbess hath her promise given,
My child shall be the bride of Heaven;—
Be pardoned one repining tear!
For He who gave her knows how dear,

544. Bride of Heaven. One whose life is wholly devoted to the church.
How excellent! — but that is by,
And now my business is — to die. —
Ye towers! within whose circuit dread
A Douglas by his sovereign bled;
And thou, O sad and fatal mound!
That oft hast heard the death-axe sound,
As on the noblest of the land
Fell the stern headsman’s bloody hand,—
The dungeon, block, and nameless tomb
Prepare — for Douglas seeks his doom!
But hark! what blithe and jolly peal
Makes the Franciscan steeple reel?
And see! upon the crowded street,
In motley groups what masquers meet!
Banner and pageant, pipe and drum,
And merry morrice-dancers come.
I guess, by all this quaint array,
The burghers hold their sports to-day.

547. **By.** Past.
550. **Douglas.** The fate of William, eighth Earl of Douglas, whom James II. stabbed in Stirling Castle with his own hand, and while under his royal safe conduct, is familiar to all who read Scottish history. **Scott.**
551. **O sad and fatal mound.** An eminence on the north-east of the Stirling Castle where state criminals were executed. Stirling was often polluted with noble blood. **Scott.**
558. **Franciscan.** A Roman Catholic order founded by St. Francis on the principle of poverty. He held that neither the individual nor an institution should acquire or hold any right of property. — 560. **Mottey.** Made up of various kinds.— **Masquers.** Players disguised in masks.
562. **Morrice-dancers.** Performers of a Moorish dance, a popular amusement of the day, in which all classes of society joined. The actors, personating certain characters, as Friar Tuck, Robin Hood, etc., were disguised in curious vestments of fawn-colored silk in the form of a tunic, with trappings of green and red satin, and wore bells around their ankles, with which they kept time to the music. See note, Canto V., line 615.
563. **Quaint.** Odd and fanciful.
564. **The burghers hold their sports to-day.** Every burgh of Scotland
James will be there; he loves such show,
Where the good yeoman bends his bow,
And the tough wrestler foils his foe,
As well as where, in proud career,
The high-born tilter shivers spear.
I'll follow to the Castle-park,
And play my prize; — King James shall mark
If age has tamed these sinews stark,
Whose force so oft in happier days
His boyish wonder loved to praise.”

XXI.

The Castle gates were open flung,
The quivering drawbridge rocked and rung,
And echoed loud the flinty street
Beneath the coursers’ clattering feet,
As slowly down the steep descent
Fair Scotland’s King and nobles went,
While all along the crowded way
Was jubilee and loud huzza.
And ever James was bending low
To his white jennet’s saddle-bow,

of the least note, but more especially the considerable towns, had their solemn play, or festival, when feats of archery were exhibited, and prizes distributed to those who excelled in wrestling, hurling the bar, and the other gymnastic exercises of the period. Stirling, a usual place of royal residence, was not likely to be deficient in pomp upon such occasions, especially since James V. was very partial to them. His ready participation in these popular amusements was one cause of his acquiring the title of King of the Commons. — Scott.

566. Yeoman. A countryman; in England, next in order of rank to the gentry. The term is also applied to a member of the King’s guard.

569. Tilter. One using the lance on horseback.

Doffing his cap to city dame,
Who smiled and blushed for pride and shame.
And well the simperer might be vain,—
He chose the fairest of the train.
Gravely he greets each city sire,
Commends each pageant’s quaint attire,
Gives to the dancers thanks aloud,
And smiles and nods upon the crowd,
Who rend the heavens with their acclaims,—
“Long live the Commons’ King, King James!”
Behind the King thronged peer and knight,
And noble dame and damsel bright,
Whose fiery steeds ill brooked the stay
Of the steep street and crowded way.
But in the train you might discern
Dark lowering brow and visage stern;
There nobles mourned their pride restrained,
And the mean burgher’s joys disdained;
And chiefs, who, hostage for their clan,
Were each from home a banished man,
There thought upon their own gray tower,
Their waving woods, their feudal power,
And deemed themselves a shameful part
Of pageant which they cursed in heart.

594. Commons’ King. So called because he favored the common people
as opposed to the nobles.
603. Hostage. A person given as security for the performance of the
conditions of a treaty.
606. Feudal power. Power to command the services of tenants or
vassals in case of war.
XXII.
Now, in the Castle-park, drew out
Their checkered bands the joyous rout. 610
There morricers, with bell at heel
And blade in hand, their mazes wheel;
But chief, beside the butts, there stand
Bold Robin Hood and all his band,—
Friar Tuck with quarterstaff and cowl,
Old Scathelocke with his surly scowl,
Maid Marian, fair as ivory bone,
Scarlet, and Mutch, and Little John;
Their bugles challenge all that will,
In archery to prove their skill. 620
The Douglas bent a bow of might,—
His first shaft centred in the white,
And when in turn he shot again,
His second split the first in twain.
From the King’s hand must Douglas take
A silver dart, the archers’ stake;
Fondly he watched, with watery eye,
Some answering glance of sympathy,—
No kind emotion made reply!
Indifferent as to archer wight, 630
The monarch gave the arrow bright.

610. Checkered bands. Companies of players in gay dresses.— Rout.
614. Robin Hood. A noted robber or outlaw in the reign of Richard I.,
about the year 1190. The exhibition of this renowned outlaw and his band
was a favorite frolic at festivals in which kings did not disdain to be actors.
615–18. Friar Tuck, Scathelocke, Maid Marian, Scarlet, Mutch, and
Little John were companions of Robin Hood, renowned in ballad, and
mentioned in Scott’s Ivanhoe.— Quartersstaff. A stout staff used as a
weapon of defence.— Cowl. A monk’s hood.
XXIII.

Now, clear the ring! for, hand to hand,
The manly wrestlers take their stand.
Two o'er the rest superior rose,
And proud demanded mightier foes, —
Nor called in vain, for Douglas came. —
For life is Hugh of Larbert lame;
Scarce better John of Alloa's fare,
Whom senseless home his comrades bare.
Prize of the wrestling match, the King
To Douglas gave a golden ring,
While coldly glanced his eye of blue,
As frozen drop of wintry dew.
Douglas would speak, but in his breast
His struggling soul his words suppressed;
Indignant then he turned him where
Their arms the brawny yeomen bare,
To hurl the massive bar in air.
When each his utmost strength had shown,
The Douglas rent an earth-fast stone
From its deep bed, then heaved it high,
And sent the fragment through the sky
A rood beyond the farthest mark;
And still in Stirling's royal park,
The gray-haired sires, who know the past,
To strangers point the Douglas cast,
And moralize on the decay
Of Scottish strength in modern day.

XXIV.
The vale with loud applauses rang,
The Ladies' Rock sent back the clang.  
The King, with look unmoved, bestowed
A purse well filled with pieces broad.
Indignant smiled the Douglas proud,
And threw the gold among the crowd,
Who now with anxious wonder scan,
And sharper glance, the dark gray man;
Till whispers rose among the throng,
That heart so free, and hand so strong,
Must to the Douglas blood belong.
The old men marked and shook the head,
To see his hair with silver spread,
And winked aside, and told each son
Of feats upon the English done,
Ere Douglas of the stalwart hand
Was exiled from his native land.
The women praised his stately form,
Though wrecked by many a winter's storm;
The youth with awe and wonder saw
His strength surpassing Nature's law.
Thus judged, as is their wont, the crowd,
Till murmurs rose to clamors loud.
But not a glance from that proud ring
Of peers who circled round the King
With Douglas held communion kind,
Or called the banished man to mind;
No, not from those who at the chase
Once held his side the honored place,

660. The Ladies' Rock. The ladies' stand for viewing the sports.
674. Stalwart. Strong.
Begirt his board, and in the field
Found safety underneath his shield;
For he whom royal eyes disown,
When was his form to courtiers known!

XXV.

The Monarch saw the gambols flag,
And bade let loose a gallant stag,
Whose pride, the holiday to crown,
Two favorite greyhounds should pull down,
That venison free and Bourdeaux wine
Might serve the archery to dine.
But Lufra,—whom from Douglas’ side
Nor bribe nor threat could e’er divide,
The fleetest hound in all the North,—
Brave Lufra saw, and darted forth.
She left the royal hounds midway,
And dashing on the antlered prey,
Sunk her sharp muzzle in his flank,
And deep the flowing life-blood drank.
The King’s stout huntsman saw the sport
By strange intruder broken short,
Came up, and with his leash unbound
In anger struck the noble hound.
The Douglas had endured, that morn,
The King’s cold look, the nobles’ scorn,
And last, and worst to spirit proud,
Had borne the pity of the crowd;
But Lufra had been fondly bred,
To share his board, to watch his bed,

708. **Leash.** A thong of leather, or long line, by which a hunter holds his dog.
And oft would Ellen Lufra's neck
In maiden glee with garlands deck;
They were such playmates that with name
Of Lufra Ellen's image came.
His stifled wrath is brimming high,
In darkened brow and flashing eye;
As waves before the bark divide,
The crowd gave way before his stride;
Needs but a buffet and no more,
The groom lies senseless in his gore.
Such blow no other hand could deal,
Though gauntletted in glove of steel.

XXVI.

Then clamored loud the royal train,
And brandished swords and staves amain,
But stern the Baron's warning: "Back!
Back, on your lives, ye menial pack!
Beware the Douglas.—Yes! behold,
King James! The Douglas, doomed of old,
And vainly sought for near and far,
A victim to atone the war,
A willing victim, now attends,
Nor craves thy grace but for his friends."—
"Thus is my clemency repaid?
Presumptuous Lord!" the Monarch said:
"Of thy misproud ambitious clan,
Thou, James of Bothwell, wert the man,
The only man, in whom a foe
My woman-mercy would not know;

724. **Buffet.** A blow with the hand; a cuff.
738. **Clemency.** Mercy.—740. **Misproud.** Mistakenly proud.
But shall a Monarch’s presence brook
Injurious blow and haughty look? —
What ho! the Captain of our Guard!
Give the offender fitting ward. —
Break off the sports!” — for tumult rose,
And yeomen ’gan to bend their bows,—
“Break off the sports!” he said and frowned,
“And bid our horsemen clear the ground.”

Then uproar wild and misarray
Marred the fair form of festal day.
The horsemen pricked among the crowd,
Repelled by threats and insult loud;
To earth are borne the old and weak,
The timorous fly, the women shriek;
With flint, with shaft, with staff, with bar,
The hardier urge tumultuous war.
At once round Douglas darkly sweep
The royal spears in circle deep,
And slowly scale the pathway steep,
While on the rear in thunder pour
The rabble with disordered roar.
With grief the noble Douglas saw
The Commons rise against the law,
And to the leading soldier said:
“Sir John of Hyndford, ’twas my blade
That knighthood on thy shoulder laid;
For that good deed permit me then
A word with these misguided men.—

XXVIII.

"Hear, gentle friends, ere yet for me
Ye break the bands of fealty.
My life, my honor, and my cause,
I tender free to Scotland’s laws.
Are these so weak as must require
The aid of your misguided ire?
Or if I suffer causeless wrong,
Is then my selfish rage so strong,
My sense of public weal so low,
That, for mean vengeance on a foe,
Those cords of love I should unbind
Which knit my country and my kind?
O no! Believe, in yonder tower
It will not soothe my captive hour,
To know those spears our foes should dread
For me in kindred gore are red:
To know, in fruitless brawl begun,
For me that mother wails her son,
For me that widow’s mate expires,
For me that orphans weep their sires,
That patriots mourn insulted laws,
And curse the Douglas for the cause.
O let your patience ward such ill,
And keep your right to love me still!"

773. Fealty. Loyalty.
XXIX.
The crowd's wild fury sank again
In tears, as tempests melt in rain.
With lifted hands and eyes, they prayed
For blessings on his generous head
Who for his country felt alone,
And prized her blood beyond his own.
Old men upon the verge of life
Blessed him who stayed the civil strife;
And mothers held their babes on high,
The self-devoted Chief to spy,
Triumphant over wrongs and ire,
To whom the prattlers owed a sire.
Even the rough soldier's heart was moved;
As if behind some bier beloved,
With trailing arms and drooping head,
The Douglas up the hill he led,
And at the Castle's battled verge,
With sighs resigned his honored charge.

XXX.
The offended Monarch rode apart,
With bitter thought and swelling heart,
And would not now vouchsafe again
Through Stirling streets to lead his train.
"O Lennox, who would wish to rule
This changeling crowd, this common fool?
Hear'st thou," he said, "the loud acclaim
With which they shout the Douglas name?

810. **Trailing arms.** Carrying a gun in an oblique position, pointing forward with the breech near the ground.
812. **Battled Verge.** See note, Canto I., line 199.
With like acclaim the vulgar throat
Strained for King James their morning note;
With like acclaim they hailed the day
When first I broke the Douglas sway;
And like acclaim would Douglas greet
If he could hurl me from my seat.
Who o'er the herd would wish to reign,
Fantastic, fickle, fierce, and vain?
Vain as the leaf upon the stream,
And fickle as a changeful dream;
Fantastic as a woman's mood,
And fierce as Frenzy's fevered blood.
Thou many-headed monster-thing,
O who would wish to be thy king?—

XXXI.

"But soft! what messenger of speed
Spurs hitherward his panting steed?
I guess his cognizance afar—
What from our cousin, John of Mar?"

"He prays, my liege, your sports keep bound
Within the safe and guarded ground;
For some foul purpose yet unknown,—
Most sure for evil to the throne,—
The outlawed Chieftain, Roderick Dhu,
Has summoned his rebellious crew;
'Tis said, in James of Bothwell's aid
These loose banditti stand arrayed.
The Earl of Mar this morn from Doune
To break their muster marched, and soon

Your Grace will hear of battle fought; 850
But earnestly the Earl besought,
Till for such danger he provide,
With scanty train you will not ride."

XXXII.

"Thou warn'st me I have done amiss,— 855
I should have earlier looked to this;
I lost it in this bustling day.—
Retrace with speed thy former way;
Spare not for spoiling of thy steed,
The best of mine shall be thy meed.
Say to our faithful Lord of Mar,
We do forbid the intended war;
Roderick this morn in single fight
Was made our prisoner by a knight,
And Douglas hath himself and cause
Submitted to our kingdom's laws.
The tidings of their leaders lost
Will soon dissolve the mountain host,
Nor would we that the vulgar feel,
For their Chief's crimes, avenging steel.
Bear Mar our message, Braco, fly!
He turned his steed,—"My liege, I hie,
Yet ere I cross this lily lawn
I fear the broadswords will be drawn."
The turf the flying courser spurned,
And to his towers the King returned.

XXXIII.
Ill with King James’s mood that day
Suited gay feast and minstrel lay;
Soon were dismissed the courtly throng,
And soon cut short the festal song.
Nor less upon the saddened town
The evening sunk in sorrow down.
The burghers spoke of civil jar,
Of rumored feuds and mountain war,
Of Moray, Mar, and Roderick Dhu,
All up in arms;—the Douglas too,
They mourned him pent within the hold,
"Where stout Earl William was of old."—
And there his word the speaker stayed,
And finger on his lip he laid,
Or pointed to his dagger blade.
But jaded horsemen from the west
At evening to the Castle pressed,
And busy talkers said they bore
Tidings of fight on Katrine’s shore;
At noon the deadly fray begun,
And lasted till the set of sun.
Thus giddy rumor shook the town,
Till closed the Night her pennons brown.

OUTLINE OF CANTO SIXTH.

This Canto introduces us to the guard-room in Stirling Castle, amid the remains of the debauch which has followed the games of the previous day. While the few soldiers who remain awake are finishing their carouse, and talking over the rumors of yesterday's battle, they are joined by one of their mates who has been in the field, and brings with him a maiden and a minstrel (Ellen and Allan Bane). They are at first disposed to treat the maiden roughly, but the sight of her innocent beauty and her story of misfortune touch the heart of one of the roughest in the company, who becomes her champion. Presently they are joined by the officer of the guard, who, at sight of Fitz-James's ring, commits the lady to proper care, while John of Brent, the guardsman who had interfered, grants Allan's request to see his master; but, fancying that the minstrel is one of Roderick's clansmen, he shows him into the wrong cell, where he finds the wounded chief. After anxious inquiries as to the safety of his kindred, Roderick asks news of the fight, and the minstrel, in spirited verse, sings the battle of Beal' an Duine, whose issue was left doubtful by the arrival of a messenger from the king with orders to stay the fight. But before he had finished his song the stern spirit had fled, and the minstrel's harp changes its tune from battle-song to death-dirge.

Meanwhile Ellen waits anxiously and impatiently for her audience with the king. At last Fitz-James appears to escort her to the audience chamber. Faltering, she looks round to find the king, and sees, to her surprise, that her companion alone remains covered, and "Snowdoun's knight is Scotland's king." He tells her how the feud with Douglas is at an end, and that her father is now to be "the friend and bulwark of his throne." But she has still the ring, still some boon to ask. She begs for Roderick's life, but that is past giving; and when she shrinks from further request, the king calls forth Malcolm, and throws over him a golden chain, which he gives to Ellen to keep.—TAYLOR.
Canto Sixth.

THE GUARD-ROOM.

I.

The sun, awakening, through the smoky air
Of the dark city casts a sullen glance,
Rousing each caitiff to his task of care,
Of sinful man the sad inheritance;
Summoning revellers from the lagging dance,
Scaring the prowling robber to his den;
Gilding on batted tower the warder's lance,
And warning student pale to leave his pen,
And yield his drowsy eyes to the kind nurse of men.

What various scenes, and O, what scenes of woe,
Are witnessed by that red and struggling beam!
The fevered patient, from his pallet low,
Through crowded hospital beholds it stream;
The ruined maiden trembles at its gleam,
The debtor wakes to thought of gyve and jail,
The love-lorn wretch starts from tormenting dream;
The wakeful mother, by the glimmering pale,
Trims her sick infant's couch, and soothes his feeble wail.

II.

At dawn the towers of Stirling rang
With soldier-step and weapon-clang,

15. Gyve [jiv]. A fetter or chain to confine the legs.
While drums with rolling note foretell
Relief to weary sentinel.
Through narrow loop and casement barred,
The sunbeams sought the Court of Guard,
And, struggling with the smoky air,
Deadened the torches' yellow glare.
In comfortless alliance shone
The lights through arch of blackened stone,
And showed wild shapes in garb of war,
Faces deformed with beard and scar,
All haggard from the midnight watch,
And fevered with the stern debauch;
For the oak table's massive board,
Flooded with wine, with fragments stored,
And beakers drained, and cups o'erthrown,
Showed in what sport the night had flown.
Some, weary, snored on floor and bench;
Some labored still their thirst to quench;
Some, chilled with watching, spread their hands
O'er the huge chimney's dying brands,
While round them, or beside them flung,
At every step their harness rung.

III.

These drew not for their fields the sword,
Like tenants of a feudal lord,
Nor owned the patriarchal claim
Of Chieftain in their leader's name;

23. Loop. Loop-hole; a narrow opening in a fortification through which small arms are discharged. — Casement. Window.
Adventurers they, from far who roved,
To live by battle which they loved.
There the Italian's clouded face,
The swarthy Spaniard's there you trace;
The mountain-loving Switzer there
More freely breathed in mountain-air;
The Fleming there despised the soil
That paid so ill the laborer's toil;
Their rolls showed French and German name:
And merry England's exiles came,
To share, with ill-concealed disdain,
Of Scotland's pay the scanty gain.
All brave in arms, well trained to wield
The heavy halberd, brand, and shield;
In camps licentious, wild, and bold;
In pillage fierce and uncontrolled;
And now, by holytide and feast,
From rules of discipline released.

IV.

They held debate of bloody fray,
Fought 'twixt Loch Katrine and Achray.
Fierce was their speech, and 'mid their words
Their hands oft grappled to their swords;

47. **Adventurers.** The Scottish armies consisted chiefly of the nobility and barons, with their vassals, who held lands under them, for military service by themselves and their tenants. James V. seems first to have introduced, in addition to the militia furnished from these sources, the service of a small number of mercenaries, who formed a body-guard, called the Foot-Band. **Scot.**—51. **Switzer.** An inhabitant of Switzerland.

53. **Fleming.** A citizen of Flanders, now part of Belgium.

60. **Halberd.** A kind of broad axe now rarely used.

63. **Holytide.** Holiday; festal season (tide means time).
Nor sunk their tone to spare the ear
Of wounded comrades groaning near,
Whose mangled limbs and bodies gored
Bore token of the mountain sword,
Though, neighboring to the Court of Guard,
Their prayers and feverish wails were heard,—
Sad burden to the ruffian joke,
And savage oath by fury spoke!—
At length up started John of Brent,
A yeoman from the banks of Trent;
A stranger to respect or fear,
In peace a chaser of the deer,
In host a hardy mutineer,
But still the boldest of the crew
When deed of danger was to do.
He grieved that day their games cut short,
And marred the dicer’s brawling sport,
And shouted loud, “Renew the bowl!
And, while a merry catch I troll,
Let each the buxom chorus bear,
Like brethren of the brand and spear.”

v.

Soldier’s Song.

Our vicar still preaches that Peter and Poule
Laid a swinging long curse on the bonny brown bowl,
That there’s wrath and despair in the jolly black-jack,
And the seven deadly sins in a flagon of sack;

Yet whoop, Barnaby! off with thy liquor,
Drink upsees out, and a fig for the vicar!

Our vicar he calls it damnation to sip
The ripe ruddy dew of a woman’s dear lip,
Says that Beelzebub lurks in her kerchief so sly,
And Apollyon shoots darts from her merry black eye;
Yet whoop, Jack! kiss Gillian the quicker,
Till she bloom like a rose, and a fig for the vicar!

Our vicar thus preaches,—and why should he not?
For the dues of his cure are the placket and pot;
And ’tis right of his office poor laymen to lurch
Who infringe the domains of our good Mother Church.
Yet whoop, bully-boys! off with your liquor,
Sweet Marjorie’s the word, and a fig for the vicar!

VI.

The warder’s challenge, heard without,
Stayed in mid-roar the merry shout.
A soldier to the portal went,—
“Here is old Bertram, sirs, of Ghent;
And — beat for jubilee the drum! —
A maid and minstrel with him come.”
Bertram, a Fleming, gray and scarred,
Was entering now the Court of Guard,
A harper with him, and, in plaid
All muffled close, a mountain maid,
Who backward shrunk to ’scape the view
Of the loose scene and boisterous crew.
“What news?” they roared: — “I only know,
From noon till eve we fought with foe,
As wild and as untameable
As the rude mountains where they dwell;
On both sides store of blood is lost,
Nor much success can either boast.” —
“But whence thy captives, friend? such spoil
As theirs must needs reward thy toil.
Old dost thou wax, and wars grow sharp;
Thou now hast glee-maiden and harp!
Get thee an ape, and trudge the land,
The leader of a juggler band.”

VII.
“No, comrade; — no such fortune mine.
After the fight these sought our line,
That aged harper and the girl,
And, having audience of the Earl,
Mar bade I should purvey them steed,
And bring them hitherward with speed.
Forbear your mirth and rude alarm,
For none shall do them shame or harm.” —
“Hear ye his boast?” cried John of Brent,
Ever to strife and jangling bent;
“Shall he strike doe beside our lodge,
And yet the jealous niggard grudge.
To pay the forester his fee?
I’ll have my share howe’er it be,
Despite of Moray, Mar, or thee.”

131. Juggler. The jugglers used to call in the aid of various assistants to render these performances as captivating as possible. The glee-maiden was a necessary attendant. Her duty was tumbling and dancing; and, therefore, the Anglo-Saxon version of Saint Mark’s Gospel states Herodias to have vaulted or tumbled before King Herod. Scott.
Bertram his forward step withstood;
And, burning in his vengeful mood,
Old Allan, though unfit for strife,
Laid hand upon his dagger-knife;
But Ellen boldly stepped between,
And dropped at once the tartan screen:—
So, from his morning cloud, appears
The sun of May through summer tears.
The savage soldiery, amazed,
As on descended angel gazed;
Even hardy Brent, abashed and tamed,
Stood half admiring, half ashamed.

VIII.

Boldly she spoke: "Soldiers, attend!
My father was the soldier's friend,
Cheered him in camps, in marches led,
And with him in the battle bled.
Not from the valiant or the strong
Should exile's daughter suffer wrong."
Answered De Brent, most forward still
In every feat of good or ill;
"I shame me of the part I played;
And thou an outlaw's child, poor maid!
An outlaw I by forest laws,
And merry Needwood knows the cause.
Poor Rose,—if Rose be living now,—
He wiped his iron eye and brow,—
"Must bear such age, I think, as thou.—
Hear ye, my mates! I go to call
The Captain of our watch to hall:

CANTO VI.

THE GUARD-ROOM.

There lies my halberd on the floor;
And he that steps my halberd o'er,
To do the maid injurious part,
My shaft shall quiver in his heart!
Beware loose speech, or jesting rough;
Ye all know John de Brent. Enough."

IX.

Their Captain came, a gallant young,—
Of Tullibardine's house he sprung,—
Nor wore he yet the spurs of knight;
Gay was his mien, his humor light,
And, though by courtesy controlled,
Forward his speech, his bearing bold.
The high-born maiden ill could brook
The scanning of his curious look
And dauntless eye:—and yet, in sooth,
Young Lewis was a generous youth;
But Ellen's lovely face and mien,
Ill suited to the garb and scene,
Might lightly bear construction strange,
And give loose fancy scope to range.
"Welcome to Stirling towers, fair maid!
Come ye to seek a champion's aid,
On palfrey white, with harper hoar,
Like errant damosel of yore?
Does thy high quest a knight require,
Or may the venture suit a squire?"
Her dark eye flashed;—she paused and sighed:—
"O what have I to do with pride!—

183. Tullibardine's house. The seat of the Murrays, who were noted
for their pride.—199. Errant damosel. Wandering maiden.
Through scenes of sorrow, shame, and strife,
A suppliant for a father’s life,
I crave an audience of the King.
Behold, to back my suit, a ring,
The royal pledge of grateful claims,
Given by the Monarch to Fitz-James.”

X.
The signet ring young Lewis took
With deep respect and altered look,
And said: “This ring our duties own;
And pardon, if to worth unknown,
In semblance mean obscurely veiled,
Lady, in aught my folly failed.
Soon as the day flings wide his gates,
The King shall know what suitor waits.
Please you meanwhile in fitting bower
Repose you till his waking hour;
Female attendance shall obey
Your hest, for service or array.
Permit I marshal you the way.”
But, ere she followed, with the grace
And open bounty of her race,
She bade her slender purse be shared
Among the soldiers of the guard.
The rest with thanks their guerdon took,
But Brent, with shy and awkward look,
On the reluctant maiden’s hold
Forced bluntly back the proffered gold:
“Forgive a haughty English heart,
And O, forget its ruder part!

CANTO VI.

THE GUARD-ROOM.

The vacant purse shall be my share,
Which in my barret-cap I'll bear,
Perchance, in jeopardy of war,
Where gayer crests may keep afar."
With thanks — 'twas all she could — the maid
His rugged courtesy repaid.

XI.

When Ellen forth with Lewis went,
Allan made suit to John of Brent: —
"My lady safe, O let your grace
Give me to see my master's face!
His minstrel I, — to share his doom
Bound from the cradle to the tomb.
Tenth in descent, since first my sires
Waked for his noble house their lyres,
Nor one of all the race was known
But prized its weal above their own.
With the Chief's birth begins our care;
Our harp must soothe the infant heir,
Teach the youth tales of fight, and grace
His earliest feat of field or chase;
In peace, in war, our rank we keep,
We cheer his board, we soothe his sleep,
Nor leave him till we pour our verse —
A doleful tribute! — o'er his hearse.
Then let me share his captive lot;
It is my right, — deny it not!"
"Little we reck," said John of Brent,
"We southern men, of long descent;

Nor wot we how a name — a word—
Makes clansmen vassals to a lord:
Yet kind my noble landlord’s part,—
God bless the house of Beaudesert!
And, but I loved to drive the deer
More than to guide the laboring steer,
I had not dwelt an outcast here.
Come, good old Minstrel, follow me;
Thy Lord and Chieftain shalt thou see.”

XII.

Then, from a rusted iron hook,
A bunch of ponderous keys he took,
Lighted a torch, and Allan led
Through grated arch and passage dread.
Portals they passed, where, deep within,
Spoke prisoner’s moan and fetters’ din;
Through rugged vaults, where, loosely stored,
Lay wheel, and axe, and headsman’s sword,
And many a hideous engine grim,
For wrenching joint and crushing limb,
By artists formed who deemed it shame
And sin to give their work a name.
They halted at a low-browed porch,
And Brent to Allan gave the torch,
While bolt and chain he backward rolled,
And made the bar unhasp its hold.
They entered: — ’twas a prison-room
Of stern security and gloom,
Yet not a dungeon; for the day
Through lofty gratings found its way,
And rude and antique garniture
Decked the sad walls and oaken floor,
Such as the rugged days of old
Deemed fit for captive noble’s hold.
“Here,” said De Brent, “thou mayst remain
Till the Leech visit him again.
Strict is his charge, the warders tell,
To tend the noble prisoner well.”
Retiring then the bolt he drew,
And the lock’s murmurs growled anew.
Roused at the sound, from lowly bed
A captive feebly raised his head;
The wondering Minstrel looked, and knew —
Not his dear lord, but Roderick Dhu!
For, come from where Clan-Alpine fought,
They, erring, deemed the Chief he sought.

XIII.

As the tall ship, whose lofty prore
Shall never stem the billows more,
Deserted by her gallant band,
Amid the breakers lies a strand, —
So on his couch lay Roderick Dhu!
And oft his fevered limbs he threw
In toss abrupt, as when her sides
Lie rocking in the advancing tides,
That shake her frame with ceaseless beat,
Yet cannot heave her from her seat; —

290. Antique garniture. Ancient decoration or furnishings.
O, how unlike her course at sea!
Or his free step on hill and lea!—
Soon as the Minstrel he could scan,—
“What of thy lady? — of my clan? —
My mother? — Douglas? — tell me all!
Have they been ruined in my fall?
Ah, yes! or wherefore art thou here?
Yet speak,— speak boldly, — do not fear.” —
For Allan, who his mood well knew,
Was choked with grief and terror too.—
“How fought? — who fled? — Old man, be brief; —
Some might, — for they had lost their Chief.
Who basely live? — who bravely died?”
“O, calm thee, Chief!” the Minstrel cried,
“Ellen is safe!” “For that thank Heaven!”
“And hopes are for the Douglas given; —
The Lady Margaret, too, is well;
And, for thy clan, — on field or fell,
Has never harp of minstrel told
Of combat fought so true and bold.
Thy stately Pine is yet unbent,
Though many a goodly bough is rent.”

XIV.

The Chieftain reared his form on high,
And fever’s fire was in his eye;
But ghastly, pale, and livid streaks
Checkered his swarthy brow and cheeks.
“Hark, Minstrel! I have heard thee play,
With measure bold on festal day,
In yon lone isle, — again where ne’er
Shall harper play or warrior hear! —
That stirring air that peals on high,
O'er Dermid's race our victory.—
Strike it! — and then, — for well thou canst,—
Free from thy minstrel-spirit glanced,
Fling me the picture of the fight,
When met my clan the Saxon might.
I'll listen, till my fancy hears
The clang of swords, the crash of spears!
These grates, these walls, shall vanish then
For the fair field of fighting men,
And my free spirit burst away,
As if it soared from battle fray."
The trembling Bard with awe obeyed,—
Slow on the harp his hand he laid;
But soon remembrance of the sight
He witnessed from the mountain's height,
With what old Bertram told at night,
Awakened the full power of song,
And bore him in career along; —
As shallop launched on river's tide,
That slow and fearful leaves the side,
But, when it feels the middle stream,
Drives downward swift as lightning's beam.

XV.
Battle of Beal' an Duine.
"The Minstrel came once more to view
The eastern ridge of Benvenue,
For ere he parted he would say
Farewell to lovely Loch Achray —
Where shall he find, in foreign land,
So lone a lake, so sweet a strand! —
There is no breeze upon the fern,
   No ripple on the lake,
Upon her eyry nods the erne,
   The deer has sought the brake;
The small birds will not sing aloud,
   The springing trout lies still,
So darkly glooms yon thunder-cloud,
That swathes, as with a purple shroud,
   Benledi’s distant hill.
Is it the thunder’s solemn sound
   That mutters deep and dread,
Or echoes from the groaning ground
   The warrior’s measured tread?
Is it the lightning’s quivering glance
   That on the thicket streams,
Or do they flash on spear and lance
   The sun’s retiring beams? —
I see the dagger-crest of Mar,
I see the Moray’s silver star,
Wave o’er the cloud of Saxon war,
That up the lake comes winding far!
   To hero bound for battle-strife,
   Or bard of martial lay,
’Twere worth ten years of peaceful life,
   One glance at their array!

377. **Eyry.** The eagle’s nest. — **Erne.** The sea-eagle.
XVI.

"Their light-armed archers far and near
Surveyed the tangled ground,
Their centre ranks, with pike and spear,
A twilight forest frowned,
Their barded horsemen in the rear
The stern battalia crowned.
No cymbal clashed, no clarion rang,
Still were the pipe and drum;
Save heavy tread, and armor's clang,
The sullen march was dumb.
There breathed no wind their crests to shake,
Or wave their flags abroad;
Scarcely the frail aspen seemed to quake,
That shadowed o'er their road.
Their vaward scouts no tidings bring,
Can rouse no lurking foe,
Nor spy a trace of living thing,
Save when they stirred the roe;
The host moves like a deep-sea wave,
Where rise no rocks its pride to brave,
High-swelling, dark, and slow.

The lake is passed, and now they gain
A narrow and a broken plain,
Before the Trosach's rugged jaws;
And here the horse and spearmen pause,
While, to explore the dangerous glen,
Dive through the pass the archer-men.

406. Cymbals. Brass musical instruments, circular in form, which, being struck together, produce a sharp ringing sound.
414. Vaward scouts. A small body of men sent out in advance of an army to gain information of the enemy.
"At once there rose so wild a yell
Within that dark and narrow dell,
As all the fiends from heaven that fell
Had pealed the banner-cry of hell!
Forth from the pass in tumult driven,
Like chaff before the wind of heaven,
The archery appear:
For life! for life! their flight they ply —
And shriek, and shout, and battle-cry,
And plaids and bonnets waving high,
And broadswords flashing to the sky,
Are maddening in the rear.
Onward they drive in dreadful race,
Pursuers and pursued;
Before that tide of flight and chase,
How shall it keep its rooted place,
The spearmen's twilight wood? —
'Down, down,' cried Mar, 'your lances down!
Bear back both friend and foe!' —
Like reeds before the tempest's frown,
That serried grove of lances brown
At once lay levelled low;
And closely shouldering side to side,
The bristling ranks the onset bide. —
'We'll quell the savage mountaineer,
As their Tinchel cows the game!
They come as fleet as forest deer,
We'll drive them back as tame.'

447. **Serried.** Crowded.
452. **Tinchel.** A circle of sportsmen, by surrounding a great space, and gradually narrowing, brought immense quantities of deer together, which usually made desperate efforts to break through the Tinchel. *Scott.*
XVIII.

"Bearing before them in their course
The relics of the archer force,
Like wave with crest of sparkling foam,
Right onward did Clan-Alpine come.
   Above the tide, each broadsword bright
   Was brandishing like beam of light,
   Each targe was dark below;
   And with the ocean's mighty swing,
   When heaving to the tempest's wing,
   They hurled them on the foe.
I heard the lance's shivering crash,
As when the whirlwind rends the ash;
I heard the broadsword's deadly clang,
As if a hundred anvils rang!
But Moray wheeled his rearward rank
Of horsemen on Clan-Alpine's flank, —
   'My banner-man, advance!'
I see,' he cried, 'their column shake.
Now, gallants! for your ladies' sake,
   Upon them with the lance!'
   The horsemen dashed among the rout,
   As deer break through the broom;
Their steeds are stout, their swords are out,
   They soon make lightsome room.
Clan-Alpine's best are backward borne —
   Where, where was Roderick then!
One blast upon his bugle-horn
   Were worth a thousand men.
And refluent through the pass of fear
   The battle's tide was poured;

483. Refluent. Flowing back; ebbing.
Vanished the Saxon’s struggling spear,
Vanished the mountain-sword.
As Bracklinn’s chasm, so black and steep,
Receives her roaring linn,
As the dark caverns of the deep
Suck the wild whirlpool in,
So did the deep and darksome pass
Devour the battle’s mingled mass;
None linger now upon the plain,
Save those who ne’er shall fight again.

XIX.

“Now westward rolls the battle’s din,
That deep and doubling pass within. —
Minstrel, away! the work of fate
Is bearing on; its issue wait,
Where the rude Trosachs’ dread defile
Opens on Katrine’s lake and isle.
Gray Benvenue I soon repassed,
Loch Katrine lay beneath me cast.

The sun is set; — the clouds are met,
The lowering scowl of heaven
An inky hue of livid blue

To the deep lake has given;
Strange gusts of wind from mountain glen
Swept o’er the lake, then sunk again.
I heeded not the eddying surge,
Mine eye but saw the Trosachs’ gorge,
Mine ear but heard that sullen sound,
Which like an earthquake shook the ground,
And spoke the stern and desperate strife
That parts not but with parting life,
CANTO VI.

THE GUARD-ROOM.

Seeming, to minstrel ear, to toll
The dirge of many a passing soul.
Nearer it comes — the dim-wood glen
The martial flood disgorged again,
    But not in mingled tide;
The plaided warriors of the North
High on the mountain thunder forth
    And overhang its side,
While by the lake below appears
The darkening cloud of Saxon spears.
At weary bay each shattered band,
Eying their foemen, sternly stand;
Their banners stream like tattered sail,
That flings its fragments to the gale,
And broken arms and disarray
Marked the fell havoc of the day.

xx.

"Viewing the mountain's ridge askance,
The Saxons stood in sullen trance,
Till Moray pointed with his lance,
    And cried: 'Behold yon isle! —
See! none are left to guard its strand
But women weak, that wring the hand:
'Tis there of yore the robber band
    Their booty wont to pile; —
My purse, with bonnet-pieces store,
To him will swim a bow-shot o'er,
And loose a shallop from the shore.

516. **Dirge.** Mournful music accompanying funeral rites.
539. **Bonnet pieces.** A gold coin on which the king's head was represented with a bonnet instead of a crown, coined by the "Commons' King." **TAYLOR. Bonnet.** Cap.
Lightly we'll tame the war-wolf then,
Lords of his mate, and brood, and den.'
Forth from the ranks a spearman sprung,
On earth his casque and corselet rung,
He plunged him in the wave: —
All saw the deed, — the purpose knew,
And to their clamors Benvenue
A mingled echo gavé;
The Saxons shout, their mate to cheer,
The helpless females scream for fear,
And yells for rage the mountaineer.
'Twas then, as by the outcry riven,
Poured down at once the lowering heaven:
A whirlwind swept Loch Katrine's breast,
Her billows reared their snowy crest.
Well for the swimmer swelled they high,
To mar the Highland marksman's eye;
For round him showered, mid rain and hail,
The vengeful arrows of the Gael.
In vain. — He nears the isle — and lo!
His hand is on a shallop's bow.
Just then a flash of lightning came,
It tinged the waves and strand with flame;
I marked Duncraggan's widowed dame,
Behind an oak I saw her stand,
A naked dirk gleamed in her hand: —
It darkened, — but amid the moan
Of waves I heard a dying groan; —
Another flash! — the spearman floats
A weltering corse beside the boats,

545. Casque. A piece of armor for protecting the head and neck in battle;
a helmet. — Corselet. A piece of armor for protecting the front of the body.
And the stern matron o'er him stood,
Her hand and dagger streaming blood.

XXI.

"' Revenge! revenge!' the Saxons cried,
The Gaels' exulting shout replied.
Despite the elemental rage,
Again they hurried to engage;
But, ere they closed in desperate fight,
Bloody with spurring came a knight,
Sprung from his horse, and from a crag
Waved 'twixt the hosts a milk-white flag.
Clarion and trumpet by his side
Rung forth a truce-note high and wide,
While, in the Monarch's name, afar
A herald's voice forbade the war,
For Bothwell's lord and Roderick bold
Were both, he said, in captive hold." —
But here the lay made sudden stand,
The harp escaped the Minstrel's hand!
Oft had he stolen a glance, to spy
How Roderick brooked his minstrelsy:
At first, the Chieftain, to the chime,
With lifted hand kept feeble time;
That motion ceased,—yet feeling strong
Varied his look as changed the song;
At length, no more his deafened ear
The minstrel melody can hear;
His face grows sharp,—his hands are clenched,
As if some pang his heart-strings wrenched;
Set are his teeth, his fading eye
Is sternly fixed on vacancy;
Thus, motionless and moanless, drew
His parting breath stout Roderick Dhu!—
Old Allan-bane looked on aghast,
While grim and still his spirit passed;
But when he saw that life was fled,
He poured his wailing o'er the dead.

XXII.

_Sound._

"And art thou cold and lowly laid,
Thy foeman's dread, thy people's aid,
Breadalbane's boast, Clan-Alpine's shade!—
For thee shall none a requiem say?—
For thee, who loved the minstrel's lay,
For thee, of Bothwell's house the stay,
The shelter of her exiled line,
E'en in this prison-house of thine,
I'll wail for Alpine's honored Pine!

"What groans shall yonder valleys fill!
What shrieks of grief shall rend yon hill!
What tears of burning rage shall thrill,
When mourns thy tribe thy battles done,
Thy fall before the race was won,
Thy sword ungirt ere set of sun!
There breathes not clansman of thy line,
But would have given his life for thine.
O, woe for Alpine's honored Pine!

"Sad was thy lot on mortal stage!—
The captive thrush may brook the cage,

611. _Requiem._ A hymn, or mass, sung for the repose of the soul after death.
The prisoned eagle dies for rage.
Brave spirit, do not scorn my strain!
And, when its notes awake again,
Even she, so long beloved in vain,
Shall with my harp her voice combine,
And mix her woe and tears with mine,
To wail Clan-Alpine’s honored Pine.”

XXIII.

Ellen the while, with bursting heart,
Remained in lordly bower apart,
Where played, with many-colored gleams,
Through storied pane the rising beams.
In vain on gilded roof they fall,
And lightened up a tapestried wall,
And for her use a menial train
A rich collation spread in vain.
The banquet proud, the chamber gay,
Scarce draw one curious glance astray;
Or if she looked, ’twas but to say,
With better omen dawned the day
In that lone isle, where waved on high
The dun-deer’s hide for canopy;
Where oft her noble father shared
The simple meal her care prepared,
While Lufra, crouching by her side,
Her station claimed with jealous pride,
And Douglas, bent on woodland game,
Spoke of the chase to Malcolm Græme,

638. Storied pane. Windows adorned with historical paintings.
Whose answer, oft at random made,
The wandering of his thoughts betrayed.
Those who such simple joys have known
Are taught to prize them when they’re gone.
But sudden, see, she lifts her head,
The window seeks with cautious tread.
What distant music has the power
To win her in this woful hour?
'Twas from a turret that o'erhung
Her latticed bower, the strain was sung.

XXIV.

JAY OF THE IMPRISONED HUNTSMAN.

"My hawk is tired of perch and hood,
My idle greyhound loathes his food,
My horse is weary of his stall,
And I am sick of captive thrall.
I wish I were as I have been,
Hunting the hart in forest green,
With bended bow and bloodhound free,
For that's the life is meet for me.
I hate to learn the ebb of time
From yon dull steeple's drowsy chime,
Or mark it as the sunbeams crawl,
Inch after inch, along the wall.
The lark was wont my matins ring,
The sable rook my vespers sing;
These towers, although a king's they be,
Have not a hall of joy for me.
No more at dawning morn I rise,
CANTO VI.

THE GUARD-ROOM.

And sun myself in Ellen's eyes,
Drive the fleet deer the forest through,
And homeward wend with evening dew;
A blithesome welcome blithely meet,
And lay my trophies at her feet,
While fled the eve on wing of glee,—
That life is lost to love and me!"

XXV.

The heart-sick lay was hardly said,
The listener had not turned her head,
It trickled still, the starting tear,
When light a footstep struck her ear,
And Snowdoun's graceful Knight was near.
She turned the hastier, lest again
The prisoner should renew his strain.
"O welcome, brave Fitz-James!" she said;
"How may an almost orphan maid
Pay the deep debt — " "O say not so!
To me no gratitude you owe.
Not mine, alas! the boon to give,
And bid thy noble father live;
I can but be thy guide, sweet maid,
With Scotland's King thy suit to aid.
No tyrant he, though ire and pride
May lay his better mood aside.
Come, Ellen, come! 'tis more than time,
He holds his court at morning prime."
With beating heart, and bosom wrung,
As to a brother's arm she clung.

Gently he dried the falling tear,
And gently whispered hope and cheer;
Her faltering steps half led, half stayed,
Through gallery fair and high arcade,
Till at his touch its wings of pride
A portal arch unfolded wide.

XXVI.

Within 'twas brilliant all and light,
A thronging scene of figures bright;
It glowed on Ellen’s dazzled sight,
As when the setting sun has given,
Ten thousand hues to summer even,
And from their tissue fancy frames
Aerial knights and fairy dames.
Still by Fitz-James her footing staid;
A few faint steps she forward made,
Then slow her drooping head she raised,
And fearful round the presence gazed;
For him she sought who owned this state,
The dreaded Prince whose will was fate!—
She gazed on many a princely port
Might well have ruled a royal court;
On many a splendid garb she gazed,—
Then turned bewildered and amazed,
For all stood bare; and in the room
Fitz-James alone wore cap and plume.
To him each lady’s look was lent,
On him each courtier’s eye was bent;

713. Arcade. A series of openings, or recesses, with arched ceilings supported by columns. — 726. Presence. Presence-chamber; the room in which a great person receives guests.
Midst furs and silks and jewels sheen,
He stood, in simple Lincoln green,
The centre of the glittering ring,—
And Snowdoun’s Knight is Scotland’s King!

XXVII.

As wreath of snow on mountain-breast
Slides from the rock that gave it rest,
Poor Ellen glided from her stay;
And at the Monarch’s feet she lay;
No word her choking voice commands,—
She showed the ring,—she clasped her hands.
O, not a moment could he brook,
The generous Prince, that supplicant look!
Gently he raised her,—and, the while,
Checked with a glance the circle’s smile;
Graceful, but grave, her brow he kissed,
And bade her terrors be dismissed:

“Yes, fair; the wandering poor Fitz-James
The fealty of Scotland claims.
To him thy woes, thy wishes, bring;
He will redeem his signet ring.
Ask naught for Douglas;—yester even,
His Prince and he have much forgiven;

740. Snowdoun’s Knight is Scotland’s King. James V., of whom we are treating, was a monarch whose good and benevolent intentions often rendered his romantic freaks venial, if not respectable, since, from his anxious attention to the interests of the lower and most oppressed class of his subjects, he was, as we have seen, popularly termed the King of the Commons. For the purpose of seeing that justice was regularly administered, and frequently from the less justifiable motive of gallantry, he used to traverse the vicinage of his several palaces in various disguises. Scott.

757. Yester even. Yesterday evening.
Wrong hath he had from slanderous tongue,
I, from his rebel kinsmen, wrong. 760
We would not to the vulgar crowd,
Yield what they craved with clamor loud;
Calmly we heard and judged his cause,
Our council aided and our laws.
I stanch'd thy father's death-feud stern 765
With stout De Vaux and gray Glencairn;
And Bothwell's Lord henceforth we own
The friend and bulwark of our throne.—
But, lovely infidel, how now?
What clouds thy misbelieving brow?
Lord James of Douglas, lend thine aid;
Thou must confirm this doubting maid.”

XXVIII.

Then forth the noble Douglas sprung,
And on his neck his daughter hung.
The Monarch drank, that happy hour, 775
The sweetest, holiest draught of Power,—
When it can say with godlike voice,
Arise, sad Virtue, and rejoice!
Yet would not James the general eye
On nature's raptures long should pry;
He stepped between — "Nay, Douglas, nay,
Steal not my proselyte away!"
The riddle 'tis my right to read,
That brought this happy chance to speed.
Yes, Ellen, when disguised I stray
In life's more low but happier way,

782. Proselyte. New convert. 784. To speed. To a successful result.
'Tis under name which veils my power,  
Nor falsely veils, — for Stirling's tower  
Of yore the name of Snowdoun claims,  
And Normans call me James Fitz-James.  
Thus watch I o'er insulted laws,  
Thus learn to right the injured cause."  
Then, in a tone apart and low, —  
"Ah, little traitress! none must know  
What idle dream, what lighter thought,  
What vanity full dearly bought,  
Joined to thine eye's dark witchcraft, drew  
My spell-bound steps to Benvenue  
In dangerous hour, and all but gave  
Thy Monarch's life to mountain glaive!"  
Aloud he spoke: "Thou still dost hold  
That little talisman of gold,  
Pledge of my faith, Fitz-James's ring,—  
What seeks fair Ellen of the King?"

XXIX.
Full well the conscious maiden guessed  
He probed the weakness of her breast;  
But with that consciousness there came  
A lightening of her fears for Græme,  
And more she deemed the Monarch's ire  
Kindled 'gainst him who for her sire  
Rebellious broadsword boldly drew;  
And, to her generous feeling true,  
She craved the grace of Roderick Dhu.

802. Talisman. 'An image supposed to produce a magical or extraordinary effect in preventing evil.
"Forbear thy suit; — the King of kings
Alone can stay life's parting wings.
I know his heart, I know his hand,
Have shared his cheer, and proved his brand; —
My fairest earldom would I give
To bid Clan-Alpine's Chieftain live! —
Hast thou no other boon to crave?
No other captive friend to save?"
Blushing, she turned her from the King,
And to the Douglas gave the ring,
As if she wished her sire to speak
The suit that stained her glowing cheek.
"Nay, then, my pledge has lost its force,
And stubborn justice holds her course.
Malcolm, come forth!" — and, at the word,
Down kneeled the Graeme to Scotland's Lord.
"For thee, rash youth, no suppliant sues,
From thee may Vengeance claim her dues,
Who nurtured underneath our smile,
Hast paid our care by treacherous wile,
And sought amid thy faithful clan
A refuge for an outlawed man,
Dishonoring thus thy loyal name. —
Fetters and warder for the Graeme!"
His chain of gold the King unstrung,
The links o'er Malcolm's neck he flung,
Then gently drew the glittering band,
And laid the clasp on Ellen's hand.

825. Stained. Flushed.
833. Treacherous wile. A plot for the betrayal of a trust.
Harp of the North, farewell! The hills grow dark,
On purple peaks a deeper shade descending;
In twilight cope the glow-worm lights her spark,
The deer, half seen, are to the covert wending.
Resume thy wizard elm! the fountain lending,
And the wild breeze, thy wilder minstrelsy;
Thy numbers sweet with nature's vespers blending—
With distant echo from the fold and lea,
And herd-boy's evening pipe, and hum of housing bee.

Yet, once again, farewell, thou Minstrel Harp!
Yet, once again, forgive my feeble sway,
And little reck I of the censure sharp
May idly cavil at an idle lay.
Much have I owed thy strains on life's long way,
Through secret woes the world has never known,
When on the weary night dawned wearier day,
And bitterer was the grief devoured alone.—
That I o'erlive such woes, Enchantress! is thine own.

Hark! as my lingering footsteps slow retire,
Some Spirit of the Air has waked thy string!
'Tis now a seraph bold, with touch of fire,
'Tis now the brush of Fairy's frolic wing.
Receding now the dying numbers ring
Fainter and fainter down the rugged dell;
And now the mountain breezes scarcely bring
A wandering witch-note of the distant spell—
And now, 'tis silent all!—Enchantress, fare thee well!

845. Cavil. Find fault, without cause.
862. Seraph. An angel of the highest rank.
GLOSSARY OF WORDS NOT EXPLAINED ELSEWHERE.

Border songs (p. xxvii.): Songs relating to the wild life of the Scottish Border, or the country bordering on England, which was formerly infested with marauders and cattle-stealers.

Cure (p. 182): Priestly office.

Holy-Rood (p. 46): The castle gets its name from its connection with the abbey of Holy-Rood, or the Holy Cross.

Lurch (p. 182): To get anything privately in advance of other competitors; to outwit.

Novelas (p. xxvii.): Novels, or romances.

Placket (p. 182): Here, refers to the favor of the ladies.

Pot (p. 182): 1. A pot or tankard of ale. 2. The ale itself.

Sack (p. 181): A kind of wine.

Signs (p. 65): Gestures; here, perhaps, it refers to the act of making the sign of the cross, and means "Heaven guard or preserve us!"

Upsees (p. 182): After the Dutch fashion. To drink "upsees out" is to drink deeply, or to the bottom of the tankard.

Vicar (p. 181): Literally, a substitute; one who fills a place for another. In the church it means a subordinate priest or clergyman. He usually receives but a small part of the regular income of the parish, the rest going to his employer.

Vert and venison (p. 120, note 304): The right of vert and venison is the privilege of cutting wood (from vert, anything bearing a green leaf) and of hunting deer in the forest.
INDEX TO NOTES.

[The Numbers refer to Pages.]

According pause, 4.
Adventures, 180.
Aghast, 76.
Albany, 146.
Allan, 129.
Allan-bane, 37.
Allies, 65.
Alpine, 46.
Amain, 11.
Ambuscade, 148.
Ambush, 133.
Anathema, 83.
And the best of Loch Lomond, etc., 55.
Antique garniture, 189.
Antiquity, 76.
Apparition, 152.
Apprehensive, 117.
Arcade, 204.
Archer wight, 166.
Ardent symphony, 4.
Arraignment, 146.
Array, 186.
Ascabart, 28.
Aspen, 14.
Assuage, 44.
Astound, 66.
Astrand, 189.
Aught, 59.
Augured, 81.
Augur scathe, 124.
Augury, 110.
Auspicious, 114.
Ave Maria, 103.
Avouch, 113.

Balvaig, 97.
Ban, 82.
Banditti, 174.
Bannered pine, 52.
Bannochar, 55.
Barded, 193.
Barret-cap, 187.
Basked, 137.
Battalia, 193.
Batten, 190.
Battled fence, 66.
Battled verge, 173.
Battlement, 13.
Battle of Beal’ an Duine, 191.
Beacon, 5.
Bead, 17.
Beals-nambo, 85.
Beal’ maha, 111.
Beakers, 179.
Beamed frontlet, 5.
Beck, 150.
Beetled, 66.
Begulle, 118.
Beltane game, 51.
Ben-an, 16.
Ben-an’s gray scalp, 84.
Benharrow, 77.
Benighted, 22.
Benledi, 8.
Ben-Shie, 81.
Benvenue, 8.
Benvoirlich, 5.
Beshrew, 17.
Bettimes, 124.
Bide, 109.
Bittern, 31.
Black-jack, 181.
Black Sir Roderick, 46.
Blair-Drummond, 160.
Blantyre, 58.
Blazed, 113.
Bleeding Heart, 45.
Blench, 65.
Blithe carol, 88.
Bochastle, 153.
Bochastle’s heath, 8.
Boding, 44.
Bonnet pieces, 197.
Bonnets, 52.
Boon to crave, 127.
Bootless, 65.
Bosky, 88.
Boss, 111.
Bothwell’s bannered hall, 43.
Boune, 109, 159.
Bout, 109.
Bourne, 124.
Bower, 41.
Bracken, 96.
Bracklinn, 49.
Braes, 63.
Braes of Doune, 108.
Brake, 9.
Brand, 34.
Brawny, 167.
Breadalbane, 55.
Bride of Heaven, 162.
Brigg of Turk, 9.
Broke, 112.
Brooch, 19.
Brook, 28.
Broom, 15.
Bruce, 99.
Bucklered, 78.
Buffet, 170.
Burden, 54.
Burgeon, 54.
Butts, 166.

Buxom, 181.
By, 163.
By his chieftain’s hand, 98.
By the rood, 22.

Cabala, 80.
Cadence, 31, 54.
Cairn, 6.
Caitiff, 178.
Caledon, 3.
Cambus-kenneth’s fane, 117.
Cambusmon, 8.
Canna, 51.
Cardross, 99.
Carpet knight, 155.
Casement, 179.
Casque, 198.
Castle, 164.
Cavil, 209.
Chalice, 74.
Chanter, 52.
Checkered bands, 166.
Checkered shroud, 68.
Chiding, 11.
Clamor, 88.
Clan, 41.
Claron, 53.
Claymore, 49.
Clemency, 170.
Cloister, 16.
Close, 158.
Cognizance, 174.
Coif, 94.
Coll, 97.
Collantogle’s ford, 139.
Colr-Uriskin, 85, 99.
Combating, 67.
Common’s King, 165.
Compeers, 79.
Conceit, 108.
Conjure, 122.
Copse, 6.
Cormorant, 72.
Coronach, 89.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
<th>213</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coronet, 45.</td>
<td>Dun deer's hide, 87.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correi, 90.</td>
<td>Duncraggan, 89.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corselet, 198.</td>
<td>Dun of ermline, 123.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covert, 84.</td>
<td>Earn, 115.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cowl, 166.</td>
<td>Earth-born castles, 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crested, 4.</td>
<td>Elfin Queen, 120.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crosslet, 82.</td>
<td>Embers, 85.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cubit, 82.</td>
<td>Emblem, 44.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cumber, 90.</td>
<td>Embossed, 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curlew, 149.</td>
<td>Emprise, 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cushat, 76.</td>
<td>Enow, 65.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cymbals, 193.</td>
<td>Envenomed, 68.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daggled, 133.</td>
<td>Erne, 192.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dappled, 142.</td>
<td>Errant damosel, 185.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dank osiers, 144.</td>
<td>Errant-knight, 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darkling, 120.</td>
<td>Erst, 42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death halloo, 10.</td>
<td>Esplai, 63.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death wound, 10.</td>
<td>Estranged, 79.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dell, 72.</td>
<td>Ettrick, 63.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delusion, 152.</td>
<td>Execration, 83.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dennan's Row, 111.</td>
<td>Eyry, 192.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Despite old spleen, 61.</td>
<td>Fain, 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devan, 129.</td>
<td>Falchion, 18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device, 25.</td>
<td>Falcon, 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dewing, 90.</td>
<td>Fallow, 31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dingle, 12.</td>
<td>Fared, 123.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dirge, 197.</td>
<td>Fatal green, 121.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disembodied world, 81.</td>
<td>Favor, 135.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dispensation, 47.</td>
<td>Fay, 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disowned by every noble peer, 47.</td>
<td>Fealty, 172.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doffing, 165.</td>
<td>Feint, 156.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain, 67.</td>
<td>Fell, 70.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglasses, 43, 163.</td>
<td>Fellest, 29.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Down, 71.</td>
<td>Ferragus, 28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Down of elder, 103.</td>
<td>Feud, 125.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Druid, 77.</td>
<td>Feudal power, 165.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duchray, 99.</td>
<td>Field fare, 78.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dun, 27.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fiery Cross, 74.
Filial love, 20.
Fitting ward, 171.
Fleet, 40.
Fleming, 180.
Flushing, 90.
Foiled, 65.
Fold, 78.
Forayed, 150.
Forfeit, 133.
For retreat in dangerous hour, 25.
Franciscan, 163.
Fraught, 43.
Frenzied, 134.
Friar Tuck, 166.
From targe and jack, 151.

Gael, 142.
Gallants, 159.
Garnish, 27.
Garrisoned, 150.
Gauntlet, 33.
Glade, 13.
Glaive, 114.
Glen, 78.
Glen Artney, 5.
Glenfinlas, 61.
Glen Fruin, 55.
Glen Luss, 55.
Glinted, 151.
Glossing, 62.
Goblin, 81.
Goshawk, 84.
Gored, 181.
Graces, 19.
Graeme, 41, 99.
Grisly visage, 33.
Grot, 118.
Guerdon, 47, 186.
Gulle, 129.
Gulse, 59.
Gyve, 178.

Hag, 81.

Haggard, 83.
Halberd, 180.
Hallowed creed, 78.
Hap, 38.
Hardened flesh, 138.
Harebell, 44.
Harness, 179.
Harp of the North, 3.
Hazard our relief, 47.
Heath, 8, 74.
Heath cock, 22.
Helm, 127.
Henchman, 70.
Heritage, 29.
Heron, 23.
Hero's targe, 111.
Hest, 92.
Hied, 12.
Highland plunderers, 17.
Hind, 87.
His Border spears with Hotspur's bows, 50.
His lordship the embattled field, 127.
His targe he threw, etc., 156.
Hoary, 90.
Holy-Rood, 46, 146.
Holytide, 180.
Homage, 155.
Homicide, 47.
 Horde, 98.
Host, 180.
Hostage, 165.
Hunters live so cheerily, etc., 132.
Hurricane, 7.

Ideaen vine, 26.
Imbrue, 135.
Impending, 82.
Incessant, 66.
Inch-Caillisach, 82.
Inconstant, 122.
Incumbent, 100.
Infamy, 84.
In Holy-Rood a knight he slew, 46.
INDEX.

Insulated, 13.
Inured, 109.
Invulnerable, 117.

Jennet, 164.
Jeopardy, 187.
Juggler, 183.

Ken, 7.
Kerchief, 94.
Kernes, 111.
Kier, 160.
Kindly, 122.
Knell, 42.
Knighthood, 4, 171.
Knot-grass, 78.

Lackey, 70.
Ladies' Rock, 168.
Lair, 5.
Lanrick mead, 86.
Lave, 17.
Lay, 37.
Lea, 44.
Leagued, 50.
Leash, 169.
Leech, 189.
Legends, 74.
Lendrick, 160.
Lenox foray, 46.
Level way, 12.
Leven-glen, 55.
Lichens, 39.
Limpid, 57.
Lincoln green, 23.
Lineage of the Bleeding Heart, 65.
Links of Forth, 65.
Linn, 7.
Linnet, 37.
Little John, 166.
Loch Achray, 8.
Lochard, 8.
Loch Con, 99.
Loch Katrine, 15.

Loch Lomond, 46.
Loop, 179.
Lowered, 146.
Lubnaig, 95.
Lure, 145.

Magic, 80.
Maid Marian, 166.
Main, 38.
Marauding, 47.
Maronnan, 48.
Martial, 142.
Masquers, 163.
Matins, 17, 37.
Mavis, 119.
Maze, 4.
Measured mood, 19.
Mee, 38.
Meggat, 63.
Menials, 28.
Menial train, 201.
Mentelth, 7, 56.
Mere, 22.
Merle, 119.
Meteor fire, 90.
Mewed, 146.
Midnight blaze, 97.
Mien, 23.
Mimicry, 61.
Minaret, 13.
Minstrel, 3.
Minstrelsy, 4.
Misproud, 170.
Moat, 15.
Monan, 4.
Monk, 77.
Monument of Grecian Art, 18.
Moody, 79.
Moor, 71.
Morass, 87.
Moray's silver star, 114.
More than kindred knew, 28.
Morning prime, 203.
Morrice-dancers, 163.
Mosque, 13.
Motley, 163.
Mould, 123.
Murky, 103.
Muster, 145.
Mutch, 166.
My sovereign holds in ward my lands, 71.
Mysterious lineage, 79.

Nalad, 18.
Native bulwarks, 13.
Needwood, 184.
Nighted, 68.
Numbers, 3.
Nuptial torch, 65.

Ochtertyre, 160.
Omen, 112.
O my sweet William, 131.
On the visioned future bent, 23.
Opening pack, 6.
Orisons, 54.
O sad and fatal mound, 163.
Outlawed, 47.

Page, 101.
Pageant pomp, 70.
Pagod, 13.
Palfrey, 159.
Pallet, 178.
Palsed, 86.
Parley, 62.
Patriarch, 82.
Penance, 77.
Pennons, 130, 145.
Pent, 148.
Percy's Norman pennon, 58.
Phantom, 32.
Pibroch, 30.
Pinnacle, 12.
Plaid, 19.
Plaided, 38.
Plover, 153.

Pole-axe, 95.
Pomp, 58.
Port, 28.
Portals, 63.
Postern gate, 162.
Prelude, 53.
Presaged, 118.
Presence, 204.
Pretext, 63.
Pricked, 160.
Primeval, 100.
Prompted, 108.
Prore, 189.
Proselyte, 206.
Prune, 21.
Ptarmigan, 22.
Purvey, 183.

Quail, 60.
Quaint, 163.
Quarry, 9.
Quarterstaff, 166.
Questing, 87.

Rampart, 10.
Random, 100.
Raven, 20.
Ravine, 97.
Reave, 44.
Reck of, 127.
Recreant, 157.
Rednock, 99.
Red streamers of the north, 116.
Reeking red, 49.
Refluent, 195.
Reft, 61.
Rendezvous, 98.
Requiem, 200.
Reveillé, 31.
Revelry, 76.
Rife, 117.
Rifted, 55.
Ritual, 76.
River Demon, 80.
INDEX.

Robin Hood, 166.
Rocky isle, 24.
Roderick Vich Alpine, 54.
Roe, 6.
Ross-dhu, 55.
Rout, 6.
Rowan, 77.
Royal ward, 61.
Ruth, 156.
Ruthless, 63.

Sable, 50.
Sable-lettered page, 90.
Sable pale of Mar, 114.
Saint Fillan, 3.
Saint Hubert, 9.
Saint Modan, 42.
Satyr, 100.
Scaled, 66.
Scanned, 99.
Scarlet, 166.
Scathed, 84.
Scathelocke, 166.
Scathless, 111.
Scaur, 87.
Scourge and steel, 9.
Scroll, 113.
Searest, 90.
Sedgy, 31.

Seek other cause 'gainst Roderick
Dhu, 148.

Seine, 11.
Sentient, 113.
Sentinel, 16.
Sepulchral, 83.
Sequestered, 98.
Seraph, 209.
Serf, 124.
Serried, 194.
Shallop, 191.
Sheen, 13.
Shingles, 143.
Shingly, 81.
Shock, 149.

Shred, 134.
Shrewdly, 7.
Shrouds, 48.
Signet, 127.
Signet sage, 21.
Skirts, 96.
Slaked, 49.
Slighting the need, 22.
Slip, 137.
Slogan, 55.
Snood, 19, 79.
Snowdown, 29.
Snowdown's Knight is Scotland's
King, 206.
Sooth, 24.
Sounds, too, had come, 81.
Speed, 38.
Spells, 90.
Spey, 44.
Stag of ten, 132.
Stained, 208.
Stalwart, 168.
Stance, 115.
Stanch hound, 9.
Stark, 164.
Stirling's porch, 65, 161.
Stock, 9.
Storied pane, 201.
Straight or strait, 63.
Strand, 88.
Stranger to respect and power, 146.
Strath, 78.
Strath Endrick glen, 61.
Strath-Gartney, 97.
Strath-Ire, 92.
Strathspey, 46.
Strook, 83.
Stumah, 90.
Subterranean, 150.
Such cheek should feel the mid-
night air, 70.
Sutor, 50.
Summer solstice, 136.
Suspense, 152.
THE LADY OF THE LAKE.

Swarthy, 88.
Swath, 88.
Switzer, 180.
Sylvan war, 7.
Symbol, 83.
Taghaim, 110.
Tainted gale, 5.
Talisman, 207.
Tamed the Border-Side, 63.
Tapestried, 201.
Targe, 92.
Target, 27.
Tartans brave, 52.
Teviot, 63.
That monk of savage form and face, 77.
That party conquers in the strife, 113.
The bannered towers of Doune, 160.
The burghers hold their sports today, 163.
The flooded Teith, 8.
Three mighty lakes, 153.
Thrilling sounds, etc., 52.
Through watch and ward, 139.
Tilber, 164.
Tinchell, 194.
Tine-man, 50.
Tolls, 131.
Torry, 160.
To speed, 206.
To steal their meal, 142.
Tower, 13.
Trailing arms, 173.
Train, 126.
Trance, 113.
Treacherous wife, 208.
Triple steel, 158.
Troll, 181.
Trophies, 27.
Trosachs, 10.
Trowed, 117.
Truce, 156.
Truncheon, 146.

Tullibardine's house, 185.
Turn to bay, 10.
Turret, 13.
Tweed, 44.
Uam-Var, 6.
Unasked his birth and name, 28.
Undaunted, 47.
Unhooded, 59.
Unless he climb, etc., 15.
Unwont, 42.
Vair, 120.
Vassal, 83.
Vaward scouts, 193.
Veering, 14.
Vennachar, 9.
Ventures, 74.
Verge, 66.
Vest of Pall, 119.
Vied, 67.
Vindicative, 9.
Voluntary, 96.
Votaress, 43.
Vulgar, 175.
Wan, 67.
Waned crescent, 58.
Ward, 53.
Warder, 5.
Warily, 132.
Warrant, 139.
Weal, 72.
Weeds, 128.
Weird, 90.
Whinyard, 10.
White-haired Allan-bane, 37.
Wildering, 16.
Wiled, 45.
Wily, 126.
Wist, 123.
Witch-elm, 3.
Without a pass from Roderick Dhu, 152.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Woe worth the chase, 11.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wold, 119.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woned, 120.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wont, 21.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wot, 29.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wreak, 135.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yarrow, 63.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yeoman, 164.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yester even, 205.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yew, 82.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yore, 50.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRESSWORK BY
GINN & COMPANY,
BOSTON.
CLASSICS FOR CHILDREN.

In forming the mind and taste of the young, is it not better to use authors who have already lived long enough to afford some guaranty that they may survive the next twenty years?

"Children derive impulses of a wonderful and important kind from hearing things that they cannot entirely comprehend."—Sir Walter Scott.

The courses of study in our common schools are planned, it would seem, upon the expectation that all the pupils will have the advantages of a High School training; while the fact is that only one in twenty-five ever goes beyond the Grammar School. It is the aim of this series to remedy this great defect, so far as literature is concerned, and give to the other twenty-four a better outfit for the duties of life.

The ordinary reading-book consists largely of short selections from the authors of the day, ill-calculated to interest the pupil, or to form in him a taste for good reading. From a trial of several years it has been found that children of the ordinary Grammar School grade are capable of understanding and appreciating the best authors, like Scott, Irving, and even Shakespeare. This course presents, therefore, the choicest works of standard authors, complete as far as practicable, and gives such annotation at the foot of the page as will render them intelligible to the average pupil. The series is now complete through all the grades, and gives a much greater variety than any other course published. Many of the miscellaneous volumes are adapted to the Third and Fourth Reader grades.

The best proof of the need of such a course is the universal approbation with which it has been received.

The following are ready.

Each of the volumes is printed in large type, on good paper, and firmly bound. Each is complete; or abridged, where cutting has been necessary, by a skilful hand, without impairment of style or story. Illustrations, when desirable, are freely used. The prices have been made as low as possible. As there has been a large
call from the High Schools for the Lady of the Lake, Greek Heroes 
Quentin Durward, Stories of the Old World, Tales of a Grandfather.
and others, an edition has been bound in cloth, omitting the head-
line "Classics for Children," as possibly objectionable to higher 
classes.

Æsop’s Fables.

Edited by J. H. Stickney, with a Life of Æsop, and a Supplement con-
taining fables from La Fontaine and Krilof. 12mo. xvii + 204 pages.
Illustrated. Boards. Mailing Price, 40 cents; for introduction, 35 cents.
Cloth: 60 and 50 cents.

The book is first a Reader, then a means of language culture,
and last, but by no means least, a partial manual of ethics.

"For its purpose nothing can be better."—B. A. Hinsdale, Supt. of
Schools, Cleveland, O.

Hans Andersen’s Fairy Tales.

Edited for school and home use, by J. H. Stickney.

FIRST SERIES: Supplementary to the Third Reader, for children
from eight to twelve years of age. 12mo. viii + 280 pages. Illustrated.
Mailing Prices: Cloth, 55 cents; Boards, 45 cents. For introduction:
Cloth, 50 cents; Boards, 40 cents.

SECOND SERIES: Supplementary to the Fourth Reader, for children
from ten to fourteen years of age. 12mo. 352 pages. Illustrated. Mail-
ing Prices: Cloth, 55 cents; Boards, 45 cents. For introduction: Cloth,
50 cents; Boards, 40 cents.

There has hitherto been no edition adapted to the wants of
the varied readers to whose capacities the stories were ad-
dressed. This embarrassment is avoided by the grading of the
present edition. The text is based upon a sentence-by-sentence
comparison of the translations current in England and America.

"The fairy tales of Andersen, always popular with grown folks as
well as children, will bring joy into the schools."—L. D. Brown, State
Supt. of Schools, Ohio.

Kingsley’s Water-Babies.

Edited by J. H. Stickney. 12mo. 204 pages. Illustrated. Boards:
Mailing Price, 40 cents; for introduction, 35 cents. Cloth: 60 and 50
cents.
TESTIMONY to any extent might easily be adduced to the excellent style and healthy tone of this beautiful story. A slight abridgment has perfectly adapted it to use in the schoolroom.

"One of the best books in the field, if not the best." — I. N. MITCHELL, Supt. of Schools, Grand Rapids, Mich.

The King of the Golden River; or, The Black Brothers.


A CHARMING and wholesome fairy tale by a great author. The quaint illustrations add much to its interest.

"One of the best of all children's stories." — HARTFORD COURANT.

The Swiss Family Robinson.


The text has been carefully compiled from the best editions; and the Notes and Introduction will be found helpful.

"A fascinating story to children, giving healthful food to their love of adventure." — CHILDREN'S NEW CHURCH MAGAZINE.

Robinson Crusoe.


It has been slightly abridged by the omission of unimportant matter, and ends with Crusoe's leaving the island.

"How delighted children will be to have the privilege of reading in school the whole of Robinson Crusoe." — E. O. Hovey, Prin. of High School, Newark, N.J.

Kingsley's Greek Heroes.

THIS book is particularly fitted to please the young, while its character and style are the very best.

"Beautiful, and well adapted for class use."—A. J. TIFFANY, Supt. of Schools, Nevada City, Cal.

**Lamb's Tales from Shakespeare.**


ADAPTED to class use by the omission of *Measure for Measure*, not suited for children, and by a few verbal changes.

"I regard it as a most excellent book for Grammar School use."—JOHN S. HAYES, Prin. of Foster School, Somerville, Mass.

**Scott's Tales of a Grandfather.**

Being the history of Scotland from the earliest period to its union with England under James VI. Abridged by EDWIN GINN. Boards: Mailing Price, 50 cents; for introduction, 40 cents. Cloth: 60 and 50 cents.

THE story of a heroic age narrated in the matchless style of the great national author.

"I have examined it with the greatest satisfaction."—ROBERT C. WINTHROP.

**The Peasant and the Prince.**


A STORY of the French Revolution, clothing history with all the charm of fiction.

"A most fascinating historical story, well calculated to interest children."—SEBASTIAN THOMAS, Supt. of Schools, Ashland, O.

**Scott's Lady of the Lake.**

Edited by EDWIN GINN. 12mo. 268 pages. Boards: Mailing Price, 40 cents; for introduction, 35 cents. Cloth: 60 and 50 cents.

IT contains a brief life of Scott, and his critical notes on the poem carefully abridged, with sufficient annotation to be easily
Elementary English.

Read by children ten years old. It also contains a brief life of James V., as well as a full description of the Highlands and their clans during his reign.

"I think the editing admirable." — Wm. T. Harris.

Adventures of Ulysses.


The charm of the author's style is fairly equalled by the charm of his story. There is no abridgment.

"I wish we could adopt them all." — H. F. Harrington, Supt. of Schools, New Bedford, Mass.

Stories of the Old World.

Prepared expressly for this Series by the Rev. Alfred J. Church, M.A., author of Stories from Homer, Livy, Virgil, etc. 12mo. 354 pages. Boards: Mailing Price, 50 cents; for introduction, 40 cents. Cloth: 60 and 50 cents.

The contents comprise the stories of the Argo, Thebes, the Iliad, Odyssey, and Æneid.

"These stories will interest and profit readers of all ages." — N. E. Journal of Education.

Plutarch's Lives.


The volume includes the lives of Plutarch, Themistocles, Pericles, Alexander, Coriolanus, Fabius, Sertorius, and Cæsar, and a pronouncing table of proper names.

"Like the other books of this series, it deserves more than praise." — S. M. Abnell, Supt. of Schools, Columbia, Tenn.

Scott's Talisman.

Edited by Dwight Holbrook, Principal of Morgan School, Clinton, Conn., with an Introduction by Miss Charlotte M. Yonge. 12mo. xii + 454 pages. Boards: Mailing Price, 60 cents; for introduction, 50 cents. Cloth: 70 and 60 cents.
THE Talisman serves a double purpose, both as introducing Scott to youth, and as affording a graphic account of an important period of history. It is here given without abridgment.

"Everything that brings Scott home to the complete apprehension of the young is a moral power for good, as well as a literary help."—A. C. Perkins, Prin. of Adelphi Academy, Brooklyn, N.Y.

Scott's Quentin Durward.


In this edition the violence of old times is mitigated, while the interest of the story, and its lessons of fidelity, courage, and sturdy manhood, are not weakened.

"For supplementary reading in schools, and for the home circle, this attractive volume will be found admirable."—N. E. Journal of Education.

Irving's Sketch Book.


This volume comprises The Voyage, Westminster Abbey, The Widow and her Son, Rip Van Winkle, The Legend of Sleepy Hollow, and Christmas.

"It is the best-edited 'English Classic' (I mean for common, everyday use in the schools) I have ever seen."—A. F. Blaisdell, Author of "Outlines of English Literature."

Shakespeare's Merchant of Venice.


It contains Hudson's Life of Shakespeare, and about two-thirds of the Text and Notes of his School Edition, and Lamb's Story of the play. None of the omissions impair the value of the work for children.

"Mr. Hudson's text-books need no commendation."—E. R. Shipman, "prof. of English Literature, Williams College."
Scott's Guy Mannering.


No remarks need be made upon the interest of this book, or its fitness for a reader. It is given without abridgment.

"I am delighted with this edition of Scott."—Miss J. M. Woodward, State Normal School, New Britain, Conn.

Scott's Ivanhoe.


Like the Talisman and Guy Mannering, Ivanhoe is given complete.


Gulliver's Travels.

By Dr. Samuel Swift. 12mo. ix + 162 pages. Boards: Mailing Price, 35 cents; for introduction, 30 cents. Cloth: Mailing Price, 45 cents; for introduction, 40 cents.

I. VOYAGE to Lilliput; II. Voyage to Brobdingnag; with a sketch of the author's life.

"Every child has been deprived of a part of his birth-right if he does not read this."—Texas School Journal.

Rasselas, Prince of Abyssinia.

By Dr. Samuel Johnson, with a Sketch of the Author. 12mo. viii + 155 pages. Boards: Mailing Price, 35 cents; for introduction, 30 cents. Cloth: Mailing Price, 45 cents; for introduction, 40 cents.

The story of the pursuit for happiness, old, but ever new, and a specimen of the style of the first writer of English of his day.

"It is a classic, pure and simple; fascinating, and yet never available for school use until now."—W. H. Small, Prin. of High School, Hudson, Mass.
THE CRITICS

have uniformly approved of the design and the execution of this series. Only a few more comments can be quoted.

A. Beljame, Docteur ès Lettres, Maitre de Conférences à La Faculté des Lettres de Paris (Université de France): I regret that I did not receive the books some months before, as I should certainly have recommended to the students under my direction your edition of Scott’s Lady of the Lake, and your Selections from Washington Irving’s Sketch Book.

Thos. Wentworth Higginson: Allow me to express hearty sympathy in your plan of Classics for Children, and to say how much I like the specimens that have thus far appeared.

J. W. Stearns, Prof. of Pedagogics in the State Univ., and editor of the Wisconsin “Journal of Education, Madison,” Wis.: The enterprise interests me very much, as you have done what for a long time has seemed to me the most valuable service that could be done for the public schools, by publishing in cheap and readable form classics for reading-books. Your selections, so far as I have seen them, are admirable.

M. Schele de Vere, Prof. of English, University of Virginia: Nothing would be more gratifying to us of the South than to see this admirable series in every public or private school, since it is beyond question the best remedy for the daily-increasing evil, — an imperfect knowledge of English.

Hon. Robt. C. Winthrop: The design and the execution of your Classics for Children seem to me like excellent.

James Parton, the eminent author: I have received the specimen of your series which you have sent me, and I congratulate the children upon having them to read in school, which used to be so tedious.

J. H. Vincent, Supt. of Instruction, Chautauqua Assembly: I have received and have examined with care the Classics for Children published by your house. I desire to express my great satisfaction with the taste, skill, and wisdom of the work. I wish it abundant success.

Edward Everett Hale, Boston: The Lady of the Lake meets the wish which I have been uttering everywhere for twenty years, — for good, cheap books for the real American people. The Lady of the Lake is well printed, well edited, well enough bound, and can be bought by any man who does not drink or steal, who earns a dollar and a half a day.

Mellen Chamberlain, Librarian, Boston Public Library: These publications seem to me to be of great value, whether regarded as home reading or for use in the public school.

Eben S. Stearns, Chancellor of State Normal School, Nashville, Tenn.: Such as I have seen are admirably adapted to awaken in children and youth a love for English classic literature, and will be welcomed by all teachers who intend to keep at the front, however rapid the progress in this useful and fascinating study may be. (Oct. 30, 1886.)